Mr. Grammar

Third Edition



المركز الرئيسي : 11 شارع د/محمد رأفت – محطة الرمل – الإسكندرية

تليفون وفاكس : 4838326 (03)(2+)

موبايل : 01001634294 (2+)

www.daralbraa.com

Email: info@darAlbraa.com

محمد رجب القاضي



الناشر:	**دار البراء لنشر وتوزيع الكتب العلمية**
رئيس مجلس الإدارة:	**إبراهيم محمد إبراهيم زبير**
اسم الكتاب:	Mr. Grammar
المؤلف	**محمد رجب القاضي**
رقم الإيداع:	2014/11403
الترقيم الدولي:	978-977-723-025-4
المقاس:	21 x 29.8
عدد الصفحات:	228
العنوان:	**11 شارع د/محمد رأفت – محطة الرمل – الإسكندرية**
تليفون وفاكس:	(+2)(03) 4838326
للاستعلام والمبيعات:	(+2) 01001634294
البريد الالكتروني:	info@daralbraa.com
الموقع:	**WWW.DarAlbraa.com**

ضمائـــر الفـــاعـــــل

هى ضمائر تحل محل اسم (مفرد أو جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل) موقعه فاعل في الجملة وهى:
(He – She – It – I – We – You – They)

Ali ⟵ (يحل محل اسم مفرد مذكر عاقل) ⟵ He هو

Hoda ⟵ (يحل محل اسم مفرد مؤنث عاقل) ⟵ She هى

a pen ⟵ (يحل محل اسم مفرد غير عاقل) ⟵ It (هو – هى)

(ضمير المتكلم) نحن We — **(ضمير المتكلم) I انا**

هما – هم – هن ⟵ They (يحل محل اسم جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل)

You ⟵ انت – انتما – انتن – انتم (ضمير المخاطب)

لاحظ أن:

(He – She – It)	ضمائر الغائب المفردة
They	ضمائر الغائب للجمع

ملخص ضمائر الفاعل

جمع	مفرد
هما – هم – هن They	He هو (عاقل مذكر) She هى (عاقل مؤنث) It (هو – هى) لغير عاقل
نحن We	I انـــا
انتما – انتم – انتن You	You انت – انتى

فعل أن اكون Verb to be

ضمير الفاعل	مضارع	ماضي
(He – She – It)	is = 's يكون	Was كان – كانت – كنت
I	am = 'm اكون	Was كان – كانت – كنت
(We – You – They)	are = 're نكون – تكونوا – يكونوا	were كنا – كنتم – كانوا

Examples : امثلة

1- **<u>Rami</u> is a good boy .**
   = <u>He</u> is a good boy .
2- **<u>Heba</u> is a good girl .**
   = ……………..……………… ……..a good girl .
3- **<u>Rami and Heba</u> are good .**
   = They…………………………………. good .
4- **<u>Zaki and Fadi</u> are good.**
= ……………………………………….. good .

5- **<u>This pen</u> is red .**
   = …………… …………………………red .
6- **<u>Farmers</u> are good .**
   = ……………. ………………………good .

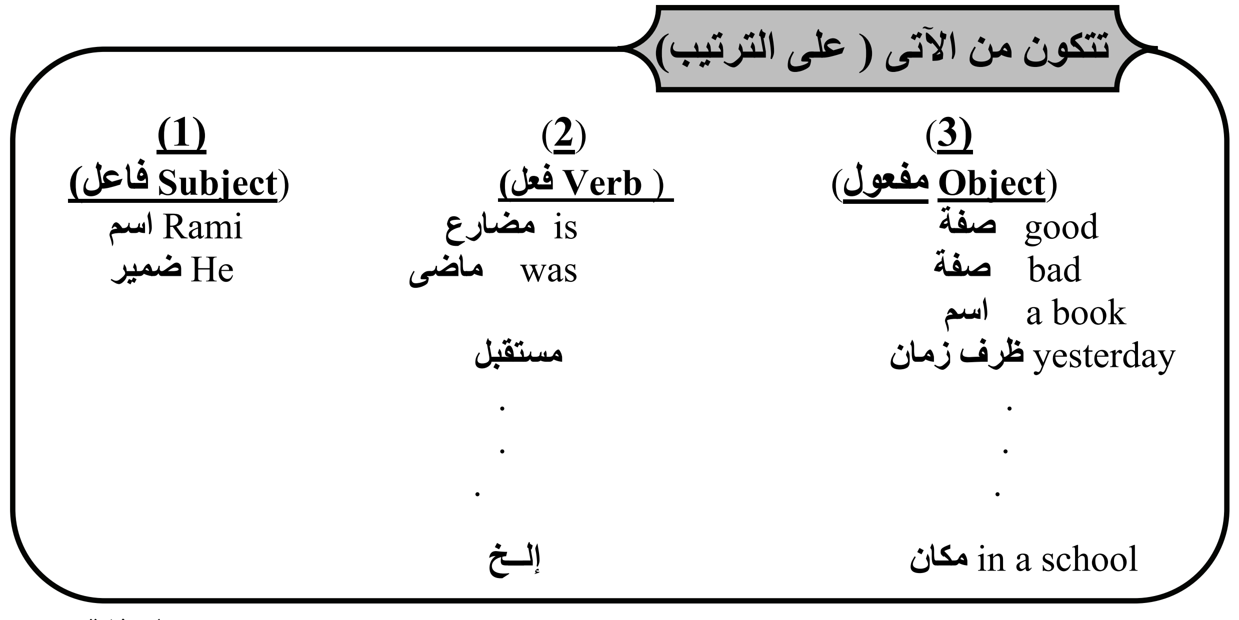
Exercises تمرينات

A. <u>Choose the correct answer</u>
1- Sami **(are – am – is)** good .
2- Noha **(are – is – am)** good.
3- Sami and Noha **(are – am – is)** good .
4- We **(am – are – is – was)** good .
5- You **(am – are - is – was)** good .
6- Rami and I **(am – is – are – was)** good .
7- My friends **(are – am – is)** good.
8- It **(are – am – is – was)** cold yesterdayامس.
9- They **(are – am – was – were)** working yesterday .
10- We **(are- am – were – was)** playing yesterday .

<u>B- Complete :</u>
1- Samir …………….. a good boy.
2- Rasha …………….. a good girl .
3- I ………. in grade ……………
4- Ali was working . = ……….. …………………..working .
5- Hala was reading. = ……….. …………….…reading .
6- Hani and Hala are good. = … … ………………….good .
7- I'm here . I was there .

8- Sami is here. ……………………….there .
9- Noha is here. ……………..……. there .
10-Sami and Noha are here. ………………………………………
11- We are here. ……………………….. there .
12- They are reading now .
13- He ………… working now.
14- You ………. reading now . 15- It ………….. working now.

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة



Ex : امثلة

1- Rami is a good boy. = He is a good boy.
2- Rami and Heba are good . = They are good.
3- I was out yesterday .
4- Sami and Rasha were out yesterday.
= They were out yesterday .

Arrange :- رتب

1- is – a – Sami – boy – good
2- are – Sami and Noha – good
3- was – grade – I – one – in
4- in – They – Tanta – were
5- red – The – is – ball

Write similar sentences :

1- Sameh is tall.
………..……………..short . **(Hoda)**
2- This book is red .
……………………………. **(desk)**

3- Farmers are good.
…………………………… **(Doctors)**

4- Rasha and Rami were out.
…………………………… **(They)**

5- We are ready to work.
…………………………… **(to play)**

6- We were playing football .
…………………….......... **(reading books)**

(للقريب) هذا this —جمعها→ these **هؤلاء**

(للبعيد) ذلك that —جمعها→ those **(للبعيد) أولئك**

Ex : امثلة:

1- This is a pen . هذا يكون قلم
These are pens. هؤلاء يكونوا اقلام
2- That is a pen. ذلك يكون قلم
Those are pens. اولئك يكونوا اقلام

Complete : follow the example :

1- This is a book . **These** are books .
2- That is a book . **Those** ………………………………
3- This is a girl . **These** ………………………………
4- That is a man. **Those** ………………………………
5- Those are farmers . ……………………………**a farmer**.
6- Those are books . …………………………..… **a book** .
7- This is a chair . **These** ……………………………
8- That is a pencil . **Those** ……………………………
9- These are doctors. ……………………………**a doctor**
10- Those are workers. …………………………… **a worker**

Verb to do فعل أن يفعل أو يؤدى

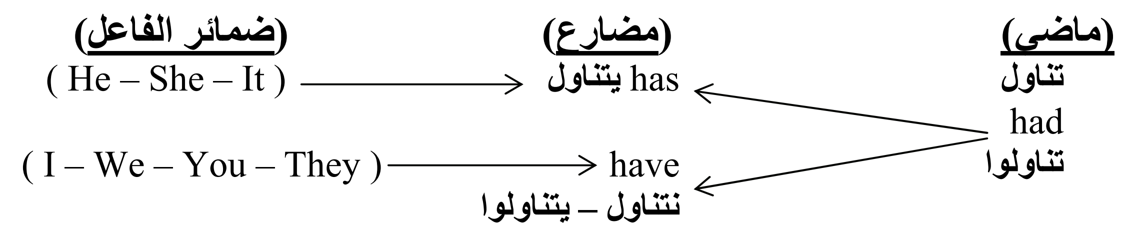
(ضمائر الفاعل) (مضارع) **(ماضى)**

(He – She – It) → does **يفعل- يؤدى** ← did **فعل – أدى**

(I – We – You – They) → do ← did **فعلنا – أدينا**

نفعل – تؤدى – يفعلوا – يؤدوا

Verb to have يتناول



Ex: امثلة

1- Rami does the work well .
2- She ……………………………
3- It ……………………………
4- He ……………………………
5- Heba ……………………………
6- I do the work well .
7- You ……………………………
8- We……………………………….
9- They ……………………………
10 – He did the work well .
11- She ……………………………
12- We ……………………………
13- You ……………………………
14- I have lunch at 2 p.m .
15- You ……………………………
16- They ……………………………
17- We ……………………………
18- Hoda has lunch at 2 p.m .
19- He ……………………………
20- They had lunch at 2 p.m .
21- We ……………………………
22- She ……………………………
23 – I ……………………………
24- Rami ……………………………
25- You ……………………………

Choose the correct answer :

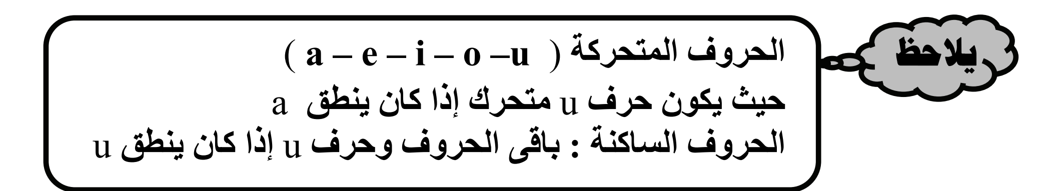
1) Rami **(does – do – is – have)** a friend .
2) I **(does – do – is – has)** my work .
3) She **(does – do – is – has)** dinner at 7 p.m .
4) You **(have – has – are – do)** very good .
5) Noha **(have – has – are – do)** lunch at 4 p.m .
6) We **(have – has – are – do)** the work .
7) They **(has – had – do – did)** lunch at 5 p.m .
8) Sami **(have – had – do – did)** his work .
9) I **(have – had – was – did)** at school .
10) I **(was – were – do – did)** ill .

11) They (**do – does – has – were**) at school .
12) They **(does – did – was – were)** the work .
13) We **(does – did – was – were)** in Tanta .
14) Heba **(does – do – was – were)** the work .
15) You **(has – have – was – were)** lunch at 2 p.m.
16) You **(has – have – was – were)** in Giza .
17) I **(has – have – was – were)** tea at 5 p.m .
18) I **(does – am – did – were)** my work.
19) This **(are – am – is – were)** a camera .
20) Those **(are – am – is – was)** cameras .
21) That **(are – am – were – was)** a camera .
22) These **(are – am – is – was)** books .
23) **(This – These – That)** are pencils .
24) **(This – These – Those)** is a pen .
25) **(This – Those – That)** are boys .

****

أدوات النكرة والتعريف
A – An – The

A تستخدم كأداة نكرة .... تسبق الاسم المفرد النكرة المبتدئ بحرف ساكن .



Ex: امثلة

a pen – a book – a man – a woman – a desk

An أداة نكرة تسبق الاسم المفرد النكرة المبتدئ بحرف متحرك

Ex: امثلة

An apple – an egg – an ice-cream – an orange – an umbrella

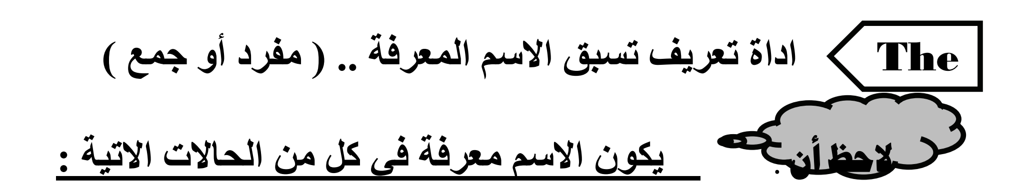
لاحظ الفرق

{ an umbrella – a uniform } – { an hour – a house }

- يمكن استخدام (a – an) بمعنى " one " أو " any" أو " per" لكل

Ex : امثلة

1) We have got a car .
2) A monkey can be as intelligent as a boy of four .
3) The price of the room is 20 pounds a night .

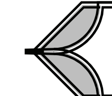


1- فريد من نوعه the sun – the moon
2- ليس له مثيل داخل المكان Look at the blackboard.
3- معرف بالإضافة ... اى بكلام يميزه .... أو بكلام يشير إليه

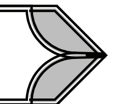
Ex : امثلة

1- Give me the book which I gave you yesterday .

2- Yesterday , I met a man . He asked me to help him .The man was old , so I helped him.



Exercise



Choose :

1) This is ………… elephant.

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

2) Look at …….sky .

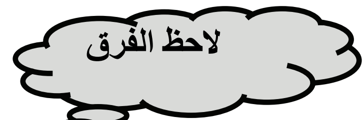
a) the **b) an** **c) a**

3) This is …………. dress.

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

4) Give me ………. book which is on the table .

a) the **b) an** **c) a**





a) I go to school to learn .

b) My father goes to **the** school to ask about me.

c) We go to the cinema to see a film .

-1- فى المثال الأول يذهب الشخص لمكان منشأ لنفس الغرض الأساسى.

-2-فى المثال الثانى يذهب الشخص لمكان منشأ لغير الغرض الأساسى.

-3 تسبق the اماكن عامة للارتياد مثل المسرح the theatre السينما the cinema

-4 تسبق the الاماكن المشهورة the High Dam – the Cairo Tower



Exercise

Choose

1- Adel is …………. good friend .

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

2- They visited ………….. Pyramids .

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

3- I met ………. old man yesterday .

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

4- Can you find ……….. River Nile on the map ?

a) the **b) an** **c) a**

5- Where did they go ? To ……… theatre .

a) the **b) an** **c) a**



استخدامات The

1) قبل الأشياء الفريدة من نوعها

- the sun – the moon – the Nile – the Red Sea

2) قبل أماكن التسلية والمشاهدة والفنادق والمتاحف والبنوك

The cinema – the theatre – the stadium

3) قبل radio – internet

4) قارن بين

- A - I like watching television .
- B- Switch on the TV. (the television set)

5) قبل الاختراعات والاكتشافات مع (**invent** يخترع – **invention** اختراع)

6) مع اسلوب المقارنة ليوضح إرتباط حدوث شئ بحدوث شئ آخر

Ex : **أمثلة**

1) The more you study , the more marks you get.
2) The sooner you start , the earlier you will finish .

7) قبل صيغ التفضيل (**superlatives**)

- The tallest – The most expensive

8) قبل المفرد عندما يقصد به النوع ككل

Ex : **امثلة**

1. The giraffe is found in Africa .
2. The whale is a mammal , not a fish .

9) عندما نقصد فكرة عامة

- The country = The countryside – The town – The ground

Ex: I like living in the country.

10) قبل الأسماء المركبة لبعض الدول *** The Sudan – The U.S.A – The A.R.E**

11) قبل الاسم (مفرد أو جمع) المعرف بتكراره أو بالاضافة

Ex: **امثلة**

1. He gave me some money , but the money wasn't enough .
2. Give me the pen which you took yesterday.

12) قبل الآلات الموسيقية the lute – the piano

قبل الكتب المقدسة The Kora'an – The Bible

لا تستخدم The في الحالات الآتية

1) قبل أسماء الوجبات وأنواع الطعام والشراب والنباتات

Breakfast – lunch – dinner – milk – trees

Ex: امثلة

1) Milk is good for children.
2) Trees can't grow without water.

2) قبل اللغات والأديان والمواد الدراسية والألعاب الرياضية والوظائف

Ex: امثلة

1) I want to study science and mathematics.
2) Football is a very popular game .
3) He speaks French very well.

3) قبل الشوارع والكبارى والميادين

- Tahrir Street – Elramle Square

4) قبل الاسم المفرد – الدال على كمية الذي لا يعد

Ex: Meat is rich in proteins.

5) قبل الأسماء المجردة

- Honesty – Democracy – beauty – happiness

6) قبل المواد (الخام) أو التى تستخدم في صناعة شئ ما

Ex : Oil is used to make plastic .

7) قبل القارات والبلاد والمدن

Asia – Africa – Egypt – Luxor

8) قبل الأسماء الجمع (countable) حيث نعبر عن افكار عامة :

Ex : امثلة

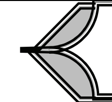
1. Women usually live longer than men .
2. Trees can be used as a fence .

9) قبل home ولا تسبق بـ to

Ex: go home – return home – on the way home

Compare:قارن

A – He went to school.
(As a student or a teacher .)
B – He went to the school. .
(As a student's father .)



Exercises

A – Choose the correct answer :

1) The bell is ringing . Open **(a – an – the)** door , please .
2) My uncle lives in **(a – an – the)** Red Sea .
3) Give me **(an - a - the)** apple and (an – a – the) banana .
4) They visited **(an – a – the)** Pyramids last winter.
5) Give me **(an – a – the)** book which is on the table .
6) He travelled to **(an – a – the – ……)** U.S.A .
7) He is good at **(an – a – the - ...…….)** English .
8) We have **(an – a – the - …….)** breakfast at 8 a.m .
9) He doesn't eat **(an – a – the - …..)** eggs .
10) Students go to **(an – a – the - …..)** school in the morning .
11) She always goes on holiday in **(a – an – the - ….)** middle of summer.
12) I respect him greatly because of his **(the – an – a – no article)** honesty .
13) This is **(an – a – the – no article)** child my sister helped .
14) The more you eat **(the fattest – the fat – the fatter – a fat)** you will be .
15) **(Man – Men – The man – The men)** used to hunt for food , but now he gets his needs at supermarkets.
16) **(A – An – The – No article) Apples/ apples** are good for you .
17) I hate **(a – an – the – no article)** intolerance .
18) On my way to **(a – an – the – no article)** opera, I saw an accident .
19) His father is **(a – an – the – no article)** accountant .
20) He booked a room in **(the – an – a – no article)** Hilton .
21) **(The – An – A – No article)** Chemistry /chemistry is difficult .
22) Look at **(a – an – the – no article)** apples on that tree.
23) I think **(a – an – the – no article)** education is something all children should value.
24) (The – No article – A – An) Pacific / pacific is the biggest ocean in the world .
25) **(A – An – The – No article)** Public / public opinion is against intolerance.
26) He went to **(the – no article – a – an)** prison because he had stolen .
27) The best suits are made from **(…. – an – a – the)** wool .
28) He went to **(… - an – a – the)** bed early.
29) Egypt is the gift of **(a – an – the - ….)** Nile .
30) I'm hungry , I want to have **(a – an ….. – the)** lunch .

- **B. Rewrite using the world (s) in brackets :**

1) She eats too much and as a result she becomes fat. **(The more)**
2) You practise much and as a result get better. **(The more)**

****

المفرد والجمع The singular And the Plural

	Singular مفرد	plural جمع
قطة	A cat	cats
كلب	A dog	………….
سمكة	A fish	………….
رجل	A man	men
امرآة	A woman	wom..n
طفل	A child	children
فرشاة	A brush	brushes
ساعة يد	A watch	………….
صندوق	A box	………….
غاز	A gas	………….
طربوش	A fez	………….
ثمرة طماطم	A tomato	………….

لاحظ أن:

المفرد المنتهى باحد النهايات الآتية

Sh – ch – x – s – z – o **يضاف الى اخره** es

A lady	ladies
An army	………..
A day	days
A play	………..

لاحظ أن

إذا كان المفرد منتهى بـ **y** و كان الـ **y** 1- مسبوق بحرف ساكن ...نحذف الـ **y** ونضيف **ies**

2- مسبوق بحرف متحرك ... نضيف **S**

A thief	thieves
A leaf	………
A wife	………

لاحظ

تحويل الـ **f** أو **fe** الى **ves**

A foot	feet
A sheep	sheep
A duck	duck
A good boy	good boys
A cold month	……… months



1. أن الصفات لا تجمع .
2. لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات لا تأتى في صورة الجمع (لا تعد)وتعامل معاملة المفرد مثل :

Money **نقود** - furniture **اثاث** - information **معلومات**

Complete : اكمل

singular	**plural**
a girl	……….
a policeman	……….
a story	……….
……….	teachers
……….	workmen
……….	armies
a toy	……….
a wish	……….
a match	……….
an address	……….
a potato	……….
……….	apples
……….	taxes
……….	months
a glass	……….
a picture	……….

V. to have got يمتلك

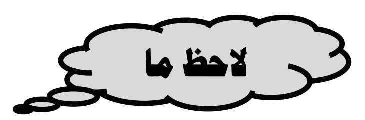
ضمائر الفاعل | مضارع فقط

(He – SHE – IT) → (has got) يمتلك

(I – We – You – They) → (have got) امتلك – نمتلك يمتلكوا

Ex: امثلة

1- I have got a car .
2- You ………………………….
3- They ………………………….
4- He has got a car.
5- Hoda ………………………….
6- Rami ………………………….
7- I haven't got any books .
8- They………………………….
9- We ………………………….
10- Sameh ………………………….
11- Noha ………………………….



نستخدم **had** وليس **had got** في الماضى

لاحظ أن

didn't have هو **had** نفى
did الفاعل **have ?** هو **had** السؤال عن

Ex: امثلة

1- I had a bike when I was young.
2- They …………………………………….
3- We …………………………………….
4- He …………………………………….
5- Noha …………………………………….
6- Zidan …………………………………….
7- Heba and Reda ………………………….
8- Did you have a bike when you were young ?
9- Did he have a bike when he was young ?
10- ……………… she …………………………….
11- ………………they…………………………….
12- ………………Hala…………………………….
13- ………………Noha and Reda…………………………….
14- ………………Ramzi…………………………….



Exercises

A-Choose

1) He **(have – has got – have got)** a car .
2) I **(has – has got – have got)** a car .
3) They **(has – has got – have got)** a car .
4) She **(have – has got – have got)** a car .
5) Rami **(have – have got – has got)** a car .
6) Rami and Noha **(has – have got – has got)** a car .
7) We **(has – have got – has got)** a car .
8) I **(has – has got – had – have got)** a cat 2 years ago.
9) They **(have got- has – has got – had)** a lorry 5 years ago.
10) She **(have – has got – had)** a car 5 years ago .

B- Complete

A. Have you got a car?
B. Yes, ……………….. (1) …………………

A. Has your brother got a car?

B. No, ………………….(2)…………………

A. ………………………(3) …………………?
B. I have got 3 brothers.

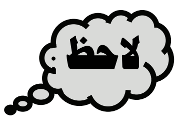
A. Have you got any sisters ?
B. No,…………………..(4)…………………..

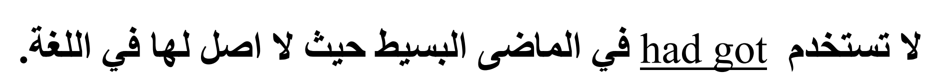
****

Have and have got

British English في الـ (has got – have got) غالبا تستخدم
American English في الـ (has – have) بينما تستخدم

British English	American English
1- I have got a new car.	I have a new car.
2- Reda has got a headache.	Reda has a headache .
3- Have you got any money ?	Do you have any money ?
Yes, I have .	Yes, I do .
No, I haven't.	No, I don't.
4- I haven't got any books.	I don't have any books.
5- Has he got a car ?	Does he have a car?
6- He hasn't got a car	He doesn't have a car.




لا تستخدم had got في الماضى البسيط حيث لا اصل لها في اللغة.

Ex: امثلة

1- When he was young , he had a villa .
2- Did you have a telephone at home when you were abroad ?
3- He didn't have enough money to buy the car.

التعبيرات الآتية يستخدم معها **has / have** في المضارع البسيط / و **had** في الماضى البسيط.

Have

breakfast – lunch – a swim – a holiday – a good time – a bath – a discussion – an argument – an effect – a haircut – an operation – a drink – a rest – a party – a shower- a wash – a fight – a chat - a look – a baby



A. Choose the correct answer

1. **I (have got – to have – have – having)** a shower when I get up every morning
2. Have you got any money ? No, I **(don't – haven't – hasn't got – don't have)**.
3. Have you got a computer ? Yes , **I (do – have – got – has got)**.
4. Does he **(have got – has got – have – has)** a sister ?
5. **(Had – Does – Have – Has)** he got a bike ?
6. When she was young , she **(had – had got - got)** beautiful toys .
7. He doesn't **(has – had – got – have)** English on Wednesday .
8. He **(has – had got – had)** a nice car five years ago .
9. **(Have – Will – Did – Had)** you got a plan for the next week ?
10. Has he got a camera ? Yes , he **(have – does – have got – has) .**

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Is there any money in your wallet ? **(Have …..)**

2- Do you have a TV ? **(Have …...)**

3- He doesn't possess a mobile . **(got)**

4- He hasn't got a new model car. **(doesn't)**

5- Do you have any pen- friends ? **(got)**

6- I don't own a car. **(got)**

****

Pronouns الضمائر

فاعل subject	مفعول object	ملكية possessive		الضمائر المركبة Reflexive
		يتبعه اسم	لا يتبعه اسم	
He	**Him**	**His**	**His**	**Himself** بنفسه
She	**Her**	**Her**	**Hers**	**Herself** بنفسها
It	**It**	**Its**		**Itself** بنفسه- بنفسها
I	**Me**	**My**	**Mine**	**Myself** بنفسى
We	**Us**	**Our**	**Ours**	**Ourselves** بأنفسنا
You	**You**	**Your**	**Yours**	**Yourself** بنفسك **Yourselves** بأنفسكم
They	**Them**	**Their**	**Theirs**	**Themselves** بأنفسهم

Ex: امثلة

(Write يكتب) (Give إعطى - gave أعطى)

1- Give **me my** pen . It's **mine** . **I** can write **myself.**
2- Give **him his** pen . It's **his** . **He** can write **himself** .
3- Give **her her** pen . It's **hers** . **She** can write **herself** .
4- Give **it its** milk . **It** can drink it **itself** .
5- Give **us our** pens . They're **ours** . **We** can write **ourselves**.
6- Give **them their** pens . They're **theirs** . **They** can write **themselves.**
7- He gave **you your** pen . It's **yours. You** can write **yourself** .
8- He gave **you your** pens . They're **yours** . **You** can write **yourselves**.



A. Choose the right answer

1) This pencil is red . **(He – She – It – They)** isn't green.
2) Rami isn't short . **(He – She – It – They)** is tall.
3) Your books are on the desk. **(He – She – It – They)** aren't in the bag .
4) Rewan is at school. **(He – She – It – They)** isn't at home .
5) **(He – Him – He's – His)** father is a doctor .
6. **(I – Mine – My – Me)** father is a teacher.
7. **(She – Hers – Her – Him)** father is a farmer .
8. **(You – Your – Yours – I)** friends are good.
9. I made the food **(himself – herself – myself – ourselves)** .
10. He made the food **(himself – herself – myself – ourselves)** .
11. We made the food **(himself – myself – ourselves).**
12. They made the food **(themselves – himself – ourselves).**
13. It isn't my pen . It's **(you – your – yours – mine**) .
14. It isn't your pen . It's **(me – mine – my – yours**) .
15. It isn't his pen . It's **(her – hers – she)** .
16. They aren't your books . They're **(our – ours – we – us)** .
17. They aren't our books . They're **(you – your – yours – ours)** .
18. It isn't my pen . Is it **(you – your – yours – my)** pen ?
19. It isn't your pen . It is **(me – mine – my – I)** pen .
20. They aren't your books . They're **(our – ours – we – is)** .
21. They aren’t our books . Are they **(theirs – their – them – they)?**
22. It isn't her pen . It's **(him – his – he – her)** pen .
23. I met **(he – his – him – she)** yesterday.
24. I met **(she – her – hers – he)** yesterday .
25. I met **(they – their – theirs – them)** yesterday .
26. He will send a letter **to (I - mine – me – my).**
27. They met **(we – us – our – ours)** yesterday.
28. I will meet **(your – yours – you – me**).
29. Ask **(he – his – him – she)** where he lives .
30. I don't drink tea in the morning . I drink **(him – it – its – her)** in the evening .

B- Complete :

1- I met Ali . I met ……………………….. yesterday .
2- He likes reading . He likes ……………. .very much.
3- He met some friends . He met ……. ….…yesterday.
4- This book isn't new. …….. ………….……..is old.
5- My father isn't short. ………………………. is tall .
6- Our school is nice. ………………………. isn't old.
7- Our friends aren't bad. ………………… are good .
8- This is Hend's pen . It's …………………………..…...
9- This is Hani's pen . It 's………………………………..
10- I cleaned the car……………………………………….

Revision (1)

A Choose the correct answer :

1) I bought **(a – the – an - ………….)** book which we saw yesterday .
2) I bought **(a - the – an …………)** bike yesterday .
3) I was hungry , so I ate **(a – the – an - ……….)** orange .
4) Would you like to have **(a – the – an - ………)** cup of tea ?
5) They visited **(a – the – an - ……)** Cairo Tower .
6) What happened to **(a – the – an - ……)** bad man ?
7) Would you like to have **(a – the – an - ………)** piece of cake ?
8) She wears **(a – the – an - …….)** uniform .
9) **(A – The – An - ……..)** nurse wears a uniform .
10) They have gone to **(a – the – an - ……)** sea.
11) I will buy **(a – the – an - ……)** umbrella .
12) Do you know where **(a – the – an - ……)** Sphinx is ?
13) Would you like to have **(a – the – an - ……..)** ice-cream ?
14) **(Is – Was – Were – Does)** you at school ?
15) I **(is – was – were – does)** at school .
16) **(Is – Are – were – do)** your father a doctor ?
17) **(Is – Are – Am – Do)** my father here ?
18) I **(am – has got – have got – was)** a red car.
19) Sami **(is – does – do – have)** his work.
20) Rami and Heba **(is – does – do – has)** their work.
21) I **(am – is – did – does)** my work .

22) Adel **(is- has got – have got – was)** a green car.
23) He **(is – did– had – was)** a golden watch .
24) Some women **(am – is – are – we)** good .
25) There **(am – is – are – was)** some children
26) This car isn't yours . It's **(my – me – mine – I) .**
27) I sent a letter to **(he – him – his – hers).**
28) Our teachers like us . **(We – Our – Ours – They)** teach us well.
29) I gave Nada her book . I gave **(she – her – hers – he)** her book.
30) Ramzy and his sister made the food **(himself – herself – themselves – yourselves).**

B- Complete :

1) Yesterday , I met ….. man . He was wearing ……. T-shirt. …..man asked me to show him ….. way to …… nearest bank . I told him to ask ……. policeman because it was my first time to be there.

2) I'm a student . I'm in grade ……... Last year , I ……. in grade …… …… like my school. . ……….. teachers like us. ……… teach us well. ………. favourite subject …….. Arabic .

3) My name ……….. Tareq . I live in ……. small house near …….. sea. ……… favourite hobby is reading . I have got two ……………….. Their names ….. Hani and Adel . My father works in ……. hospital. …… mother works in …….. school . We do our homework in……... evening . My mother helps ………… with our homework .

****

الصفـــــــات
Adjectives

أ) تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعده لتميزه عن غيره .

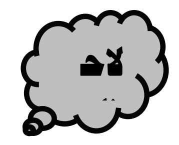
Ex: امثلة

1- This is a new book. = It is a new book . 2- This book is new . = It is new.
3-This man is old. = This is an old man .

ب) تستخدم (as صفة as تماما مثل) إذا تساوى شيئين في صفة.

Ex: امثلة

1) He is as tall as his father.
2) She is as clever as her mother.
3) He isn't as clever as his father .
   = He isn't so clever as his father.



في النفي تستخدم as صفة as أو so صفة as

Comparative and superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة

صفات ذات مقطع واحد		صفات أكثر من مقطع واحد	
Tall	طويل	**Expensive**	غالى
Short	قصير	**Difficult**	صعب
Old	عجوز – قديم	**Interesting**	شيق
Big	كبير الحجم	**Popular**	محبوب/ شعبى
Small	صغير الحجم	**Beautiful**	جميلة
New	جديد	**Useful**	نافع مفيد
Thin	نحيف		
Fat	سمين		
Easy	سهل		

لاحظ ما يلى:

أ) عند المقارنة بين شيئين .. يضاف للصفة " **er** " ونتبعها بـ **"than"** إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد (قصيرة)

Ex: امثلة

1) He is taller than his brother .
2) She is shorter than her mother.

ب) عند المقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين .. تسبق الصفة بـ **the** و نضع اخرها **"est "** وذلك إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد .

Ex: امثلة

1- Adel is the tallest one in our school.
2- Reda is the shortest one in our school.

ج) إذا تكونت الصفة من أكثر من مقطع(طويلة) فنتبع الاتى :

1) عند المقارنة بين شيئين تسبق الصفة بـ " **more** " "أكثر " ونتبعها بـ **than**

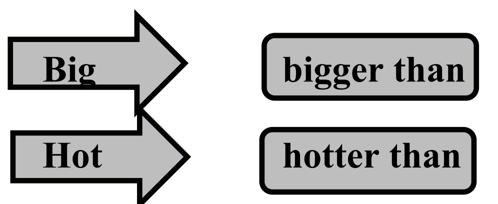
Ex:

1) Water is more useful than oil.

2) عند المقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين .. تسبق الصفة بـ the most بمعنى الاكثر

Ex: Water is the most useful material. الماء أكثر المواد نفعا





***يضاعف الحرف الساكن المسبوق بمتحرك في الصفة ذات المقطع الواحد إذا سبق الساكن بمتحرك .**

الصفات الشاذة

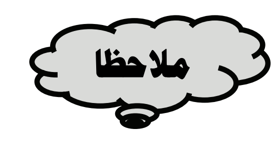
Irregular adjectives*

الصفة		مقارنة (بين اثنين)		تفضيل بين أكثر من اثنين	
good	جيد	better than	أحسن من	the best	الأحسن
bad	سيئ	worse than	اسوأ من	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther than	أبعد من	the farthest	الأبعد
many	كثير للعدد	more than	أكثر عدد من	the most	الأكثر عددا
much	كثير للكمية	more than	أكثر كمية من	the most	الأكثر كمية

little	قليل كمية	less than	أقل كمية من	the least	الأقل

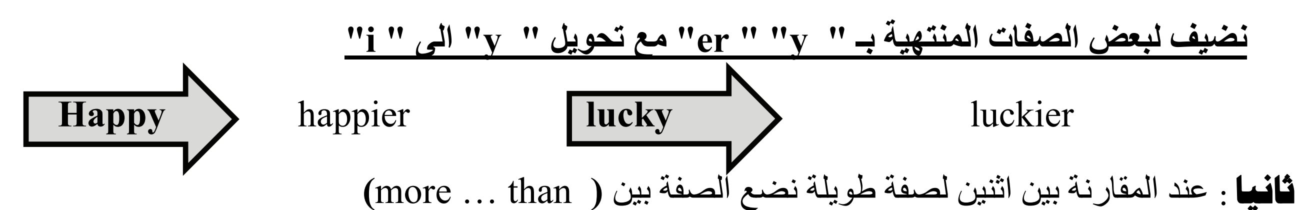
Choose:

1) February is ……….. than March .
   a) cold **b) the coldest** **c) colder**
2) January is ……….. month .
   a) cold **b) the coldest** **c) colder**
3) It is as ………. as a knife .
   a) sharper **b) the sharpest** **c) sharp**
4) Silver is ………. than iron .
   a) expensive **b) the most expensive** **c) more expensive**
5) Gold is the …………… one .
   a) expensive **b) most expensive** **c) more expensive**
6) This is ………… woman whose son got the first place .
   a) a **b) an** **c) the**



اولا : عند المقارنة بين اثنين لصفة قصيرة غالبا يتبعها than

Ex: 1- Rami is taller than Ali .
2- Rami and Ali are friends , but Rami is the older .



ثانيا : عند المقارنة بين اثنين لصفة طويلة نضع الصفة بين (more … than)

Ex : Silver is more expensive than iron.

ثالثا : عند مقارنة التساوى نستخدم (**as** صفة **not so**) في النفى أو **as** صفة **as**

Ex: Ali is not as old as Rami.
= Rami is older than Ali .
= Rami is the older of the two.





a lot – much – a bit – a little

Ex: 1- Going by bus is a lot cheaper than going by plane .
1- Going by plane is much more expensive than going by bus .

لاحـــظ : استخدام **less** في الامثلة الآتية:

Ex: 1- Ali is less stronger than Rami .
2- Tanta is less beautiful than Alexandria .

رابعا : عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين للصفة القصيرة نضيف للصفة " **est**" وتسبقها " **the**"

Ex: Rami is the tallest one in our school.

خامسا : عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين للصفة الطويلة نضع قبل الصفة " **the most**"

Ex: This is the most interesting film I have ever seen .

لاحظ ما يلى :

1- I don't drink as much water as you. **(use : less …. than)**
   * I drink less water than you .
2- The table and the desk are the same height **(as …as)**
   * The table is as high as the desk .
3- The house and the villa are not the same price. **(not as …. as)**
   The house is not as expensive as the villa.

لاحـــظ :

أ) في التفضيل يستخدم حرف الجر (in) مع الاماكن وحرف الجر of مع الفترات الزمنية

Ex: 1- The River Nile is the longest river in the world .
2- Friday is the best day of the week .

ب) يأتى بعد **nearest** حرف الجر **to** ويأتى بعد **farthest** حرف الجر **from**

Ex:

1) Tanta is the **nearest** big city **to** Alexandria .
2) Aswan is the **farthest** city **from** Alexandria .

جـ) غالبا نستخدم زمن المضارع التام بعد درجات التفضيل

Ex:

This is the most interesting film I have ever seen .

****



Exercises

A- Choose the correct answer :

1) Sami is the **(short – shorter – shortest)** one in our school .
2) Rasha is **(clever – cleverer – cleverest)** than Heba.
3) Football is **(more – less – the most – most)** popular game in Egypt .
4) My shirt is **(cheap – lot cheaper – a lot cheaper – the cheapest)** than yours .
5) Aswan is **(are – farther – farthest – the farthest)** from Cairo than Tanta is.
6) He is the **(intelligent – more intelligent – most intelligent – much intelligent)** pupil in our class .
7) Cairo is **(big – bigger – biggest – the biggest)** city in Egypt.
8) This is (**the most** – **more** – **most** – **less**) beautiful beach I have ever seen .

B-Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1) He thinks the worst thing in life is poverty. **(worse)**
2) He thinks that wealth is the best thing in life . **(better)**
3) Sami is the youngest boy in the class . **(younger)**
4) A train is not so fast as a plane . **(faster)**
5) The Nile is the longest river in the word . **(No river)**
6) Everest is the highest mountain in the world . **(higher)**
7) I haven't heard such an amusing story . **(the most)**
8) France is colder than Egypt. **(as hot as)**
9) It's the most exciting film I have ever seen . **(more)**
10) The car and the bus are the same price. **(expensive)**
11) I have never seen such a bad person in my life . **(He is the)**
12) Our project was not as successful as yours . **(more successful)**
13) I don't earn much money as my friend does **.** **(much more)**
14) Cairo is bigger than Luxor . **(big)**
15) Adel is taller than Kamel . **(tall)**
16) Tennis is not as popular as football . **(Football)**
17) The Palestinian problem is the most complicated one in the world. **(than)**
18) Alex is the most beautiful city in Egypt . **(than)**
19) The table and the desk are the same height . **(high)**
20) Samy and Adel are brothers , but Adel is the **(old)**. **(correct)**

ضمائر الوصل
Relative pronouns

Ex: 1 *who* بمعنى الذي تأتى بعد اسم عاقل
Ex : 2 * which* بمعنى الذي تأتى بعد اسم غير عاقل
Ex 3.4 which أو who محل that من الممكن أن تحل
Ex: 5.6 Whose
بمعنى الذي (تأتى بين اسمين بينهما علاقة ملكية أو تبعية أو صلة قرابة) Whose تحل محل ضمير ملكية
Ex: 7 where بمعنى حيث تأتى بعد مكان
Ex :8 when بمعنى عندما تأت بعد زمان
Ex : 9 , 10 what بمعنى الذي أو ما
Ex: امثلة

1- This is the singer who sings well.
2- These are the songs which belongs to him .
3- This is the singer that sings well .
4- These are the songs that belongs to him .
5- This is the man **whose son** has got the highest marks .(**his son**)
6- This is the cat **whose eyes** are blue and green . (**its eyes**)
7- The sea is a place where people can swim .
8- The spring is the season when the wind blows .
9- Tell me what happened .
10- Do what I have said .

Exercise

A. Choose :

1) I didn't see the man …… came yesterday .
   a) which b) whose c) where d) who
2) This is the cat ……..chased the mouse .
   a) who b) which c) whose d) where
3) Show me the book ……. you bought yesterday .
   a) who b) whose c) that d) where
4) Abdou is a doorman ….. works in a school .
   a) which b) whose c) where d) that
5) A pharmacy is a place …… we buy medicine .
   a) which b) whose c) where d) who
6) The summer is the season ……. a lot of people are on holiday
   a) who b) when c) which d) where
7) I met the man …….. son has won a lot of races .
   a) who b) which c) when d) whose
8) Tell me ………. this is .
   a) when b) what c) where d)which
9) He visited ………. yesterday .
   a) I b) me c) mine d) my
10) ……………. names are Rami and Heba .
   a) Theirs b) Their c) Them d) They
11) This book belongs to …… uncle .
   a) I b) me c) my d) mine
12) ………… are Rami and Heba .
   a) Theirs b) Their c) Them d) They
13) I bought …….. a book .
   a) he b) him c) his d)hers
14) What ……….. you doing ?
   a) was b) is c) were d) am

Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل :تابع

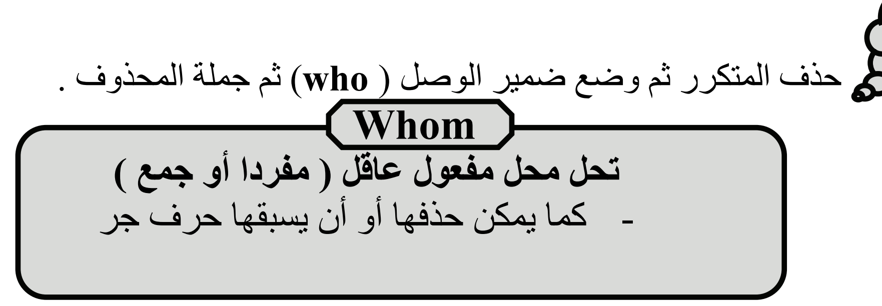
Who الذي (بعد فاعل عاقل) (مفرد أو جمع)	Whom الذي (بعد مفعول عاقل)	Which الذي (بعد فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل)	That الذي تحل محل الروابط السابقة
Whose الذي (محل ضمير ملكية)	Where حيث (بعد مكان)	When عندما (بعد فترة زمنية)	



Ex: امثلة

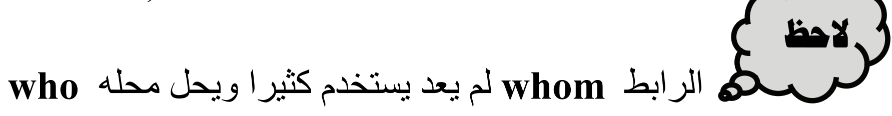
1) Rami helped a blind man . Rami was crossing the street.
   Rami who was crossing the street , helped a blind man .
2) Kamel succeeds every year. He is clever .
   Kamel who is clever , succeeds every year.

لاحظ :
حذف المتكرر ثم وضع ضمير الوصل (**who**) ثم جملة المحذوف .



Ex: امثلة

1- A poor man was crying. Rami helped him.
2- The poor man whom Rami helped, was crying.
* Sameh whom I lived with in London , was honest .
= Sameh with whom I lived in London , was honest.
= Sameh I lived with in London , was honest .

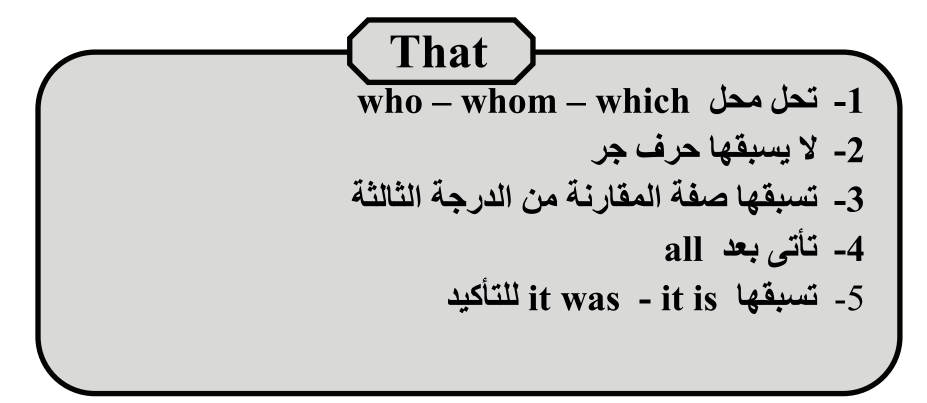


Which

الذي أو التى بعد فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل مفرد أو جمع

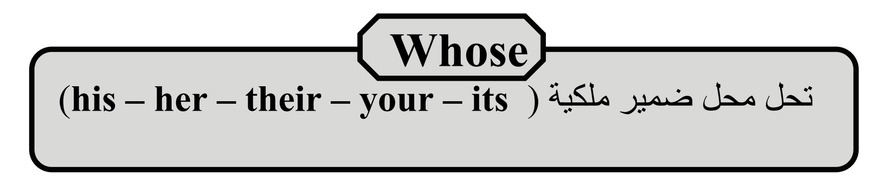
Ex: امثلة

1- Rami works for a company . It sells computers.
   Rami works for a company which sells computers .
2- The film was boring . I watched it yesterday .
   The film which I watched yesterday , was boring .



Ex: امثلة

1) The film that I watched yesterday , was boring .
2) Sameh was honest . I lived with him in London .
   - Sameh that I lived with in London , was honest .
3) This is the best book that I've ever read .
   = This is the best book I've ever read .
4) I asked for all that I want .
   = I asked for all I want.
5) It was Brazil that won the world Cup in 2002.



Ex: امثلة

1- Kamel reported the police . His flat was robbed .
   - Kamel whose flat was robbed , reported the police .
2- Some planes had to land . Their engines were out of order.
   - Some planes whose engines were out of order , had to land.

Where (قبلها مكان) حيث

Ex: امثلة

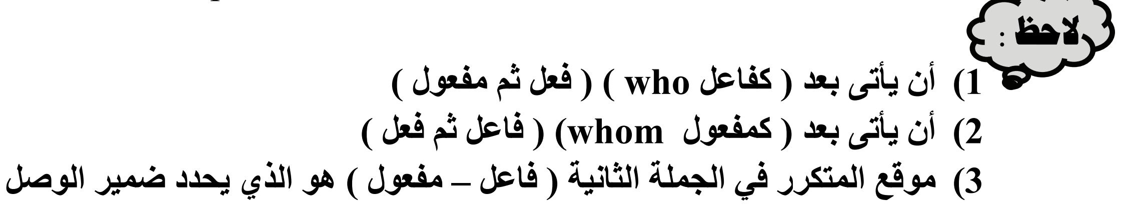
- This is my school , I study in it .
- This is my school where I study.

= This is my school which I study in .

When (بعد فترة زمنية) عندما

Ex: امثلة

1- January is a winter month . It rains heavily in it .
2- January is a winter month when it rains heavily .
3- Ramadan is a special month . Muslims fast in it .
4- Ramadan is a special month when muslims fast.



1) أن يأتى بعد (كفاعل **who**) (فعل ثم مفعول)
2) أن يأتى بعد (كمفعول **whom**) (فاعل ثم فعل)
3) موقع المتكرر في الجملة الثانية (فاعل – مفعول) هو الذي يحدد ضمير الوصل



A: Choose :

1) The man **(who – whose – which – where)** I told you about is coming towards us .
2) The hotel in **(whom – that – who – which)** I stay , is very expensive.
3) There is a supermarket nearby **(what – where – which – whom)** I buy all my needs.
4) I don't know the man **(whom – whose – where – which)** I met yesterday.
5) Here is the dictionary **(who – whose – whom – which)** you are looking for
6) He is the most intelligent boy **(who – that – whose – which)** I have ever seen
7) He did **(what – where – which – whom)** I told him to do.
8) The man **(who – which – that – whose)** brother lives in that house is a famous football player .
9) This is the company **(that – which – where – who)** he works.
10) Spring is the season **(that – which – when – where)** the wind blows.

B) Use the word between brackets to make a correct answer:

1) Rami is (young) than Sami .

……………………………………………………

2) Sameh is the (tall) one in his class.

……………………………………………………

3) Plastic is (expensive) than paper..

……………………………………………………

4) He went to see the doctor . He told him to stay in bed . **(who)**

……………………………………………………

5) I bought a car . It was expensive so much . **(which)**

……………………………………………………

6) I met a woman . Her son got the highest marks. **(whose)**

……………………………………………………

7) Students like the summer season . They take a long holiday. **(when)**

……………………………………………………

8) Sami is a student . **(Sami and Hani)**

……………………………………………………

9) He is a good man . **(They)**

……………………………………………………

10) I am in grade 2 . **(We)**

……………………………………………………

11) Hoda was eating fish . **(Heba and Noha)**

……………………………………………………

12) I was reading a book . **(We)**

……………………………………………………

13) He bought a loaf. **(ten)**

……………………………………………………

14) We watched a play yesterday . **(two)**

……………………………………………………

15) She ate a mango . **(five)**

……………………………………………………

16) He will complete his study. **(They)**

……………………………………………………

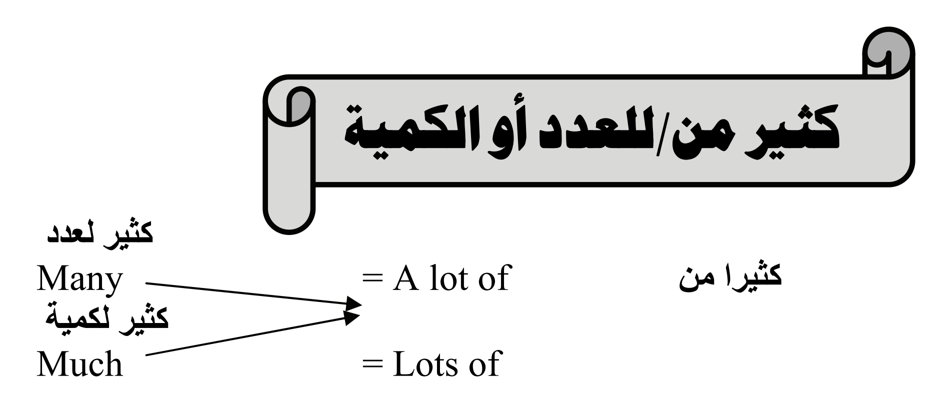
17) A woman does her best. **(their)**

……………………………………………………

C) Rewrite using the words in brackets to give the same meaning

1. I borrowed a book from Sami and I lost it . **(which)**
2. I asked a policeman and he wasn't very helpful . **(who)**
3. Kamal often travels to England . Kamal's wife is English. **(whose)**
4. The library is a place and we like to read in it. **(where)**
5. He told me a story . I have never heard of it before . **(which)**
6. He gave me a nice watch . **(The watch)**
7. Bell invented the telephone . **(that)**
8. I was educated at this school . **(where)**

****



* A few (قلي ل للعدد (يكفى -few (قليل لعدد لا يكفى)

Ex:

1) We have got a few eggs (but we won't need more) .
2) We have got few eggs . (we need to buy some) .
3) We spent a lot of money , (not much) .
4) We didn't spend much money .
   = We didn't spend a lot of money .
5) Do you know many people ?
   = Do you know a lot of people ?
6) I don't go out much – I don't go out a lot .
7) He goes out a lot . (not much).

- **تستخدم a lot of بدلا من much في الجملة المثبتة**
- **تستخدم a lot of و many في الجملة المثبتة ولكن a lot of هى الأكثر استخداما**
- **تستخدم a lot of أو much في الاستفهام وفى النفى وكذلك many**
- **مع too و so نستخدم much**
- **Too much – so much**



Ex:

1) Are there any books ?
   Yes, there are some books .
   Or : No, there aren't any books .
2) Is there any oil ?
   Yes, there is some oil .
   No , there isn't any oil .

ولكن : هل تود تناول بعض القهوة ؟

Would you like some coffee ?

- **تستخدم some وليس any في السؤال فقط عند عرض تقديم شئ لشخص ما .**



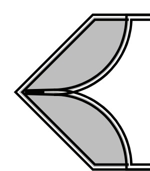
Exercises

Choose :

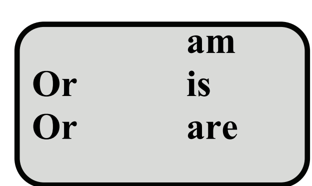
1) We need to buy some loaves . There are **(a few – few – many – much)**.
2) There are **(little - little – many – much)** students .
3) They have **(many – much – little)** books .
4) I have got **(many – a lot of – few)** oil .
5) They have got **(many – much – a little)** cars .
6) They have got **(many – a little – a few)** milk .
7) They haven't got **(many – much – a – an)** information .
8) Are there **(some – any – a – an)** cars ?
9) There are **(some – any – a – an)** cars .
10) Would you like **(some – any – a – an)** tea ?
11) There isn't **(some – any – a – an)** ink .
12) Twenty-seven is **(less than – more than – more – less)** twenty-three .
13) Our city is the **(more – less – most – little)** beautiful city in the world .
14) He is the **(worse – had – few – worst)** one at mathematics .
15) He is **(best – better – good – bad)** than his brother at English .
16) Lesson 10 is the **(more – less – most – little)** difficult.
17) He is **(strong – strongest – stronger – most)** than his brother .
18) Football is the **(most – less – more – few)** popular game .
19) My brother's school is **(big – biggest – bigger)** than mine .
20) We have got few eggs . we need to buy **(the most – more – less – the least)**
21) He gave **(my – mine – me – I)** some books .
22) They gave **(we – us – ours – our)** some books .
23) Take **(your – yours – you)** books .
24) I met **(their – theirs – they – them)** yesterday.
25) We met **(he – him – his)** yesterday .
26) She took **(hers – she – her)** books yesterday.
27) I did my homework **(himself – ourselves – myself) .**
28) They did their homework **(themselves – himself – itself) .**
29) She did her work **(himself – herself - itself).**
30) We did our work **(themselves – ourselves – myself)** .
31) He did his work **(myself – herself – himself) .**
32) Did you do the homework **(himself – yourself – herself)** .
33) Have you got **(am – some – any – a)** books ?
34) We need to buy **(an – some – any – a)** eggs .

35) I haven't got **(an – some – any – a)** books .
36) I haven't got **(many – much – few)** money.
37) I haven't got **(many – much – little)** friends .
38) He is looking for **(him – he – his)** watch .
39) They are looking for **(them – their – theirs)** books .
40) She is looking for **(her – hers – she)** watch.
41) We are looking for **(us- we – our – ours)** books.
42) I'm looking for **(me – my – mine – I)** watch.
43) Are you looking for **(you – yours – your)** books .
44) Did you do the work **(himself – yourselves – itself)** ?
45) **(A – The – An)** train to Port Said arrives at 10.30 a.m.
46) I studied **(a – the – an)** English lesson yesterday
47) I had **(a – the – an)** sandwich and an apple this morning .
48) Which is **(farthest – farther – far)** Luxor or Aswan ?
49) Can I have **(many – few – a little - fewer)** sugar ?
50) Would you like to have **(an - some – a – any)** tea ?
51) You should do your **(good – better – best)** .
52) They spent **(many – a few – a lot of – lot)** money .
53) How much sugar did you buy ? **(A lot of – A lot – Many – Few).**

****

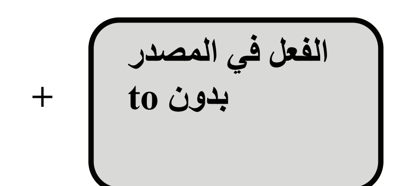


زمن المضارع المستمر
The present continuous tense



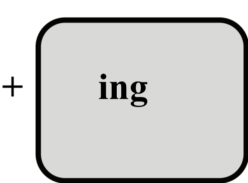
am
Or is
Or are

+

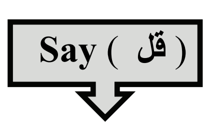


الفعل في المصدر
to بدون

+



ing



Say (قل) **don't say (لا تقل)**

Ex:

Say		Don't say	
1) I'm studying.	(✓)	I'm study.	(x)
2) He is reading.	(✓)	He is read .	(x)
3) They are playing.	(✓)	They are play.	(x)

The key words : الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر

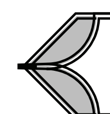
Now – At (the – this) moment – at present – look ! – Listen !
الآن في هذه اللحظة - في الوقت الحاضر - أنظر ! - إنصت!

Ex : امثلة

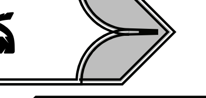
1) We are sitting now.
2) We are studying at this moment .
3) Look ! It is raining . أنظر ! أنها تمطر
4) Listen ! Someone is knocking at the door.

3) The Usage : الاستخدام

يستخدم الفعل في زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدوث فعل لحظة التحدث.



How to answer كيف نجيب



1- إذا بدأ السؤال بفعل:

1) Is it raining now ? **هل تمطر الآن**

- Yes, it is. **(مختصرة)**
- Yes, it is raining now. **(كاملة)**
- No, it isn't. **(مختصرة)** isn't = is not
- No, it isn't raining now. **(كاملة)**

2) Are they playing now ?

- Yes, they are. **(مختصرة)**
- Yes, they are playing now. **(كاملة)**
- No, they aren't . **(مختصرة)**
- No , they aren't playing now. **(كاملة)**

(Is it ?) ⟷ (it is)

(Are they ?) ⟷ (they are)

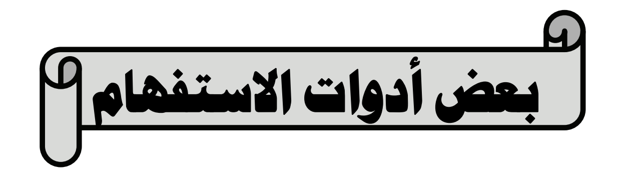
لاحظ

3) Are you studying now ?





- Yes, I'm.
- Yes , I'm studying now. (كاملة)
- No, I'm not . (مختصرة)
- No, I'm not studying now. (كاملة)



* **What** ما – ماذا (للسؤال عن شئ)

* What is this ? – It's a car .

* **When ?** متى (للسؤال عن موعد حدوث شئ)

* When are you going ? * Next week. الاسبوع القادم

* **Where ?** أين (للمكان)

* Where are you going ? To school. الى المدرسة

* **Who ?** من (للسؤال عن عاقل)

* Who is speaking ? Rami .

* **Whose ? (** من للملكية **)**

* Whose book is this ? It's Adel's. انه ملك عادل

* **How ?** (كيف للسؤال عن الحل أو سيلة الانتقال)

* How are you ? Fine , thanks.

* How are you going ? كيف تذهب By bus. بالأتوبيس

* **How old ?** كم عمر

* How old are you ? 11 years.

* **How tall ?** ما طول (الانسان أو مبنى أو شجرة)

* How tall are you ? 1.70m.

* **How long ?** ما طول

* How long is this car ? ما طول هذه السيارة - 3 m.

* **Which ?** أى للتخيير (للأختيار بين شيئين أو أكثر)

* Which is faster, a train or a plane ? – A plane .

Why ? (للسؤال على السبب) لماذا

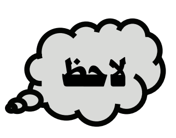
* Why are you running ? **لماذا تجرى** - To catch the train .

How to answer كيف نجيب : تابع

2ـ إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام:

1)What is Rami reading ?

* He is reading a story. **كاملة**
* A story . **مختصرة**



1. حذف أداة الاستفهام .
2. تبديل الفعل والفاعل.
3. باقى الجملة ثم الرد.

1) When are they going ? متى يذهبوا ؟

* They are going now. **كاملة**
* Now. **مختصرة**

3) How are you going to Tanta ? **كيف تذهب الى طنطا**

* I'm going by train. **كاملة**
* By train . **مختصرة**

4) Where is Heba going now ?

* She is going to school. **كاملة**
* To school. **مختصرة**



(was it ?) ⟷ (It was)

(were they ?) ⟷ (they were) (were you) ⟷ (I was)

Complete :

1) When are you going ?

A- I ………………………………………….. now.

B- ………………………….

2) What is Hadi writing?
   A- He ……………………………………a letter.
   B- ……………………………
3) How are they ?
   A- ………………………………………… fine .
   B- ……………………………
4) Where are you going ?
   A- ……………………………………… to Aswan.
   B- ………………………………………
5) Are you studying now?
   A- Yes, …………………… ……………………now.
   B- Yes, ………………………..
6) Is Shadi playing now ?
   A- No , he ……………………………………… now.
   B- No, ………………………
7) Is Heba reading now ?
   A- Yes, ………..……… …………………..now .
   B- Yes , ………………….
8) Are you reading now ?
   A- No ,……………..……………………… now.
   B- B- ………………………
9) Was it hot ? هل كان الجو حارا
   A- Yes, ………………………hot.
   B- Yes, ……………………….
10) Were they playing ?
   A- Yes, ……………………….
   B- Yes, ……………………….
   C- No, ……………………….
   D- No,……………………….
11) Were you sleeping ?
   A- ……………………….
   B- ……………………….
   C- ……………………….
   D- ……………………….

How to ask كيف نسأل

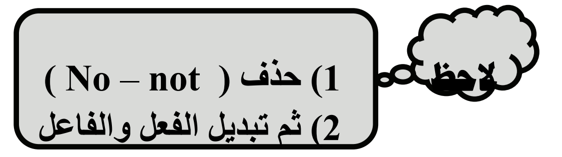
1ـ إذا بدأت الإجابة ب Yes أو No :

Ex:

1) Yes, he is at school .
   * Is he at school ?
2) Yes, they are eating now
   * Are they eating now ?
3) Yes, I'm ready to go now
   * Are you ready to go now ?

لاحظ : 1) حذف **yes** 2) تبديل الفعل والفاعل 3) باقى الجملة

4) Yes, they were reading
   * Were they reading ?
5) Yes, I was Writing a letter . (I was) ⟷ (were you ?)
   * Were you writing a letter ?
   (It is) ⟷ (Is it) - (It was) ⟷ (was it ?)
6) No, he isn't at home now .
   * Is he at home now ?
7) No, they aren't working now .
   * Are they working now ?
8) Are they working now ?
   * Are they working now ?
9) No , I wasn't playing football
   * Were you playing football ?



Complete :

1) Yes, she is cooking rice.
   Is……………………………………… rice ?

2) Yes, they are working hard .
   * …………………………….......... hard ?
3) Yes, I'm working hard .
   * ………………… ………………..hard ?
4) Yes, I was reading an English book
   * ……………………. ……………book ?
5) Yes, it was working .
   * ……………………...........................?
6) Yes they were playing well.
   * …………………………………………?
7) No , he isn't working now.
   * …………………………………………?
8) No, they aren't playing football .
   * …..………………… ……………football ?
9) No, it wasn't hot .
   *…………………………………………..?
10) No I'm not going to Tanta .
   *……………………………………….. ?
11) No, I wasn't working there .
   *……………………………………… ?
12) No , they weren't reading the lesson.
   *…………………………………………… ?

2ـ إذالم تبدأ الإجابة ب Yes أو No : **نحذف ما نسأل عنه ونبدأ بأداة الإستفهام المناسبة.**

1- He is playing football.
* What is he playing?
2- She is cooking lunch.
* ……………………………………………………?
3- They are coming at 3 o'clock.
* When are they coming?
4- They are going to Luxor.
*……………………………………………………?
5- I'm going by bus.
* How are you going?
6- I'm reading a book.
* ……………………………………………………..?
7- I'm going to Cairo.

*……………………………………………………………?

8- I'm <u>reading</u>.
* What are you doing?
9- I'm <u>studying</u>.
*………………………………………………………………?
10- Hani and Rasha are <u>eating</u>.
* What are Hani and Rasha doing?
11- Sami and Nora are <u>playing</u>.
*………………………………………………………………?

****

Revision(2)

<u>A:Complete:</u>

<u>(1)</u>

<u>A:</u> Is Rami coming soon?

<u>B:</u> Yes,……………………………….. 1

<u>A:</u> How is he coming?

<u>B:</u> ……………………………………….2

<u>A</u>: Are you going to meet him?

<u>B:</u>No,…………………………………….3

<u>A:</u>……………………………………………..?4

<u>B:</u> Yes, I'm going to meet him later فيما بعد.

<u>A:</u> ……………………………………………….?5

<u>B:</u> No,I'm not going to visit him a lot.

<u>A:</u> ………………………………………………..?6

B: He is going back by plane.

A: ……………………………………………………?7

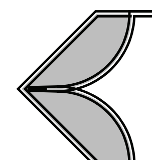
B: I'm going to stay here for a month.

(2)

A: Where are you going now ?
B: …………… (1) …………….to Giza .
A: …………… (2) ……………………?
B: I'm going with my uncle .
A: Are you going to stay in a hotel .
B: ………….. (3) ………………….. . we are going to stay in my grand father's house .
A: ………….. (4) ………………… ?
B: Yes, I'm going to visit the pyramids .
A: How long are you going to stay ?
B: ………….. (5)……………..for 2 weeks .

B:Choose the correct answer :

1. They are **(eat – eating – eats)** now .
2. It is **(work – works – working)** now.
3. I'm **(reading – read – reads)** a letter.
4. Are there **(a – some – any – an)** eggs .
5. I'd like **(a – some – any – an)** biscuits .
6. There **(am – is – are)** some books .
7. There **(am – is – are)** some oil.
8. Listen ! the birds **(singing – are singing – sing)** .
9. Look! The bus **(is coming – comes – coming)**.



زمن المضارع البسيط
The present simple tense

1) **The form : التكوين**

- **يتكون الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط من الصريف الأول للفعل ... (play – played)**

ولكن : 1) تضاف **s** لأخر الفعل إذا كان الفاعل (مفرد غائب) (**he – she – It**)

(Ali – Hoda – A car)

*** Say ***	*** قل ***	**Don't say ***	*** لا تقل ***
- He works	(✓)	He work	(x)
- Rami works	(✓)	Rami work	(x)
- She works	(✓)	She work	(x)
- Heba works	(✓)	Heba work	(x)
- It works	(✓)	It work	(x)
- I work	(✓)	I works	(x)
- You work	(✓)	You works	(x)
- They work	(✓)	They works	(x)

2) **تضاف (es) لآخر الفعل المضارع المنتهى باحد النهايات الآتية و كان الفاعل (مفرد غائب):**

- **O**	g**o**	He g**oes**
- **ch**	cat**ch**	He cat**ches**
- **sh**	fi**sh**	He fi**shes**
- **ss**	pre**ss**	He pre**sses**
- **X**	mi**x**	He mi**xes**

* They **go** – I **go** – we **go**

2) **إذا انتهى الفعل المضارع بـ y**

أـ مسبوقة بحرف ساكن:	**ب- مسبوقة بحرف متحرك:**
stu**dy**	Pl**ay**
- He stu**dies**	- He pl**ays**
[تحول الى (**y**) الى (**i**) وتضاف (**es**)]	[تضاف **s** فقط]

2) The key words : الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط

usually - always – often – sometimes
عادة – دائما – غالبا - أحيانا

every (day – week – year ……) Nowadays في هذه الايام
كل يوم اسبوع عام

Never –rarely – frequently – generally – scarcely
ابدا نادرا بصفة متكررة بصفة عامة نادرا

3) The Usage : الإستخدام

يستخدم الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير اما عن :

أ) **(Habit) عادة**

Ex: I get up early , but my brother get**s** up late .

ب) **(Fact) حقيقة**

Ex: The sun rise**s** in the east and set**s** in the west.

Exercises

A)Choose the correct answer :

1) He **(speak – spoken – speaks – speaking)** English well .
2) They **usually (works – work – working)** by day.
3) They **(are working – work – works)** now .
4) Rami always **(going – go – is going – goes)** to Tanta in summer.
5) I **(reading – read – am reading – reading)** every evening .
6) Rami and Noha **(reading – read – are reading – reads)** every morning.
7) I **(working – am working – work – works)** now .
8) We sometimes **(visits – visiting – are visiting - visit)** Luxor in winter .

B) Correct the verbs between brackets :

1) Hoda always (cook) well . Hoda always cooks well .
2) They always (cook) well . * They always cook well.
3) I (read) a book now * I'm reading a book now.
4) It usually (work) well *…………………………
5) Sami and Hadi often (play) football every Friday.
*……………………………………………………
6) He (cross) this road everyday .
* He crosses this road everyday .
7) They (finish) their work every evening.
*………..……………………………………………..
8) I (study) my lessons now.
*………..……………………………………………..
9) Farmers (grow) crops every year.
*………..……………………………………………..
10) Sameh (teach) everyday.
*………..……………………………………………..

C) Make similar sentences

1) Rami speaks English well .
   Heba ……………………………

2) We visit Tanta every summer.
   They ……………………………….
   I ……………………………….
3) I'm writing English now .
   He ……………………………….
   We ……………………………….
   Hani ……………………………….
4) I usually sleep early .
   He ………………………………..
   Noha ……………………………..
   We ……………………………..
   They ……………………………..
   She ……………………………..
   Sameh ……………………………..
   You ……………………………..
   Sameh and Noha ……………………………..
5) I usually study my lessons in the evening .
   He ………………………………..
   Noha ……………………………..
   We ……………………………..
   They ……………………………..
   She ……………………………..
   Sameh ……………………………..
   You ……………………………..
   Sameh and Noha ……………………………..

تابع زمن المضارع البسيط

How to answer كيف نجيب

أ) أسئلة تبدأ بـ Do أو Does

EX:

1) Do they like music ?
Yes, they like music. (كاملة) (Yes حذف do واستبدالها بـ)
Yes , they do. (مختصرة)

*****yes ثم (تبديل بين الفعل do والفاعل They)**

2) Do they go early ?
* Yes, …………………………………………. كاملة
* Yes, …………………………………………. مختصرة

3) Do you like music ?
Yes, I like music .
Yes , I do.

4) Do you study hard ?
* ……………………………………………..
* ……………………………………………..

5) Does he like music ?
* Yes , he likes music .
* Yes, he does. (تبديل وضع does والفاعل)

*****لاحظ حذف does و إضافة s لآخر الفعل فى الإجابة الكاملة.**

6) Does she cook well ?
* ……………………………………………..
* ……………………………………………..

7) Does Rami speak Italian ?
No, he doesn't speak Italian .
No, he doesn't. (عند النفى تجرى عملية تبديل الفعل والفاعل مع وضع not بعد does)

8) Does Hoda cook badly ?
* No , ……………………………………………..
* No, ……………………………………………..

9) Does your father speak English?
   * No , he …………………………………………
   * No, ………………………………………………...
10) Do they speak badly ?
   * No , they don't speak badly .
   * No they don't.
11) Do they cook badly ?
   * No , ………………………………………………..
   * No, ……………………………………………….
12) Do you speak badly ?
   * No , I don't speak badly .
   * No I don't .
13) Do you like music ?
   * No , ………………………………………………..
   * No, ……………………………………………….
14) Do Heba and Nader speak badly ?
   * No , ………………………………………………..
   * No, ……………………………………………….

ب) اسئلة تبدأ بأداة استفهام

Ex:
1) When do they go to school ?
   - They go to school in the morning .
   - In the morning (الرد فقط)
2) How do they go to school ?
   - ………………………………………………..
   -………………………………………………..
3) When do you go to school ?
   - I go school in the morning.
   - In the morning.
4) How do you go to school ?
   * ………………………………………………..
   * ………………………………………………..
5) What do you study ?
   * ……………………………………………….English .
   * ………………………………………………..
6) When does it rain ?
   - It rains in winter .

في الاجابة الكاملة 1) نحذف الأداة + **does** أو **do** ثم 2) باقى الجملة ثم 3) الرد على الأداة

- In winter . (مختصرة)

7) How does he go ?
   ………………………………………….. by taxi .
   ………………………………………….. (مختصرة)
8) When does the wind blow ? **متى تهب الرياح**
   It ……………………………………… in the spring.
9) Where does your father work ?
   ………………………………………….. in a school .

How to ask كيف تسال

أ) إذا بدأت الاجابة بـ yes أو No

Ex:

1) Yes, they work hard .
   * Do they work hard ?
   استبدلت yes بـ Do ثم باقى الجملة
2) Yes , they study well.
   * ……………………………………………………..?
3) Yes, I work hard .
   * Do you work hard ?
4) Yes, I study well .
   *……………………………………………………..?
5) Yes , I like Arabic .
   * ……………………………………………………..?
6) Yes , he works hard .
   * Does he work hard ?
7) Yes, she likes Arabic.
   * ……………………………………………………..?
8) Yes , Rami works in a school .
   ……………………………………………………..?
9) Yes , Heba plays well .
   ……………………………………………………..?
10) No , he doesn't like music.
   * Does he like music ?

لاحظ : 1) حذف (**no + not**) ثم 2) تبديل الفعل والفاعل(**does**والفاعل)

11) No, She doesn't study hard .
* ……………………………………………………………..?
12) No, it doesn't work well .
* ……………………………………………………………?
13) No , Hani doesn't speak badly.
*……………………………………………………………..?
14) No , they don't speak badly .
* Do they speak badly?

لاحظ حذف (**no – not**) ثم تبديل الفعل والفاعل بين **do** والفاعل

15) No, they don't work well .
* ……………………………………………………………..?
16) No, I don't work badly .
* Do you work badly ?
17) No, I don't speak badly.
* ……………………………………………………………..?
18) No , I don't go there.
* ……………………………………………………………..?

ب)إذا بدأت الاجابة بفاعل :

Ex:

1) أداة الاستفهام المناسبة
2) **الفعل المساعد do ثم**
3) الفاعل
4) الفعل الاصلى
5) نحذف ما نسأل عنه

1) They speak well .
* How do they speak ?
2) They work well .
* ……………………………?
3) They work in a school .
* ……………………………?
4) I work in a school .
* Where do you work ?
5) I speak English well.
* ……………………………?
6) I study Arabic in the evening.
*…………………………….. ?
7) I learn English .
* ……………………………?
8) He speaks English well . ⟵ **لاحظ: 1) نبدأ بأداة الاستفهام المناسبة**
* How does he speak English
9) She works in a school . **2) ثم does اذاانتهى المضارع بـ s**
* ……………………………?

10) Sami learns English .

* ……………………………………… ?

3) ثم الفاعل ثم الفعل الاصلى بعد حذف s .

11) Heba studies Arabic .

* …………………………………………?

Complete:

A: What do you learn at school ?
B: ………….. (1) ……………… a few subjects .
A: ………….. (2)………………….. ?
B: Mr. Farid teaches us English .
A: Do you speak English well ?
B: …………… (3) ……………. and I write well too .
A: ……………(4) ……………………… ?
B: Yes, the Arabic teacher teaches us well .
A: How often do you learn English ?
B: ……………(5) …………………… a week .
A: ……………………..(6) …………… ?
B: I draw very well .
A: Does your friend , Rami go to school with you ?
B: ……………(7) …………. and come back alone too .
A: …………… (8)…………………….. ?
B: He goes back home by taxi

****

Revision(3)

A. Choose the correct answer :

1) Reda and Hadi **(am – is – are – was)** friends.
2) At this moment , I **(write – writing – am writing)** a letter .
3) There are **(many – much – little – an)** flowers .
4) He usually **(getting – get – gets – is getting)** up early.
5) He **(am – was – are – were)** out .
6) Look ! something **(is burning – burn – burns) .**
7) When did you meet Sami ? I met **(he – him –he – his)** yesterday.
8) **(Our – We – Us)** school is very big .
9) **(They – Them – Their – Theirs)** names are Rami and Kamel .
10) I did my homework **(ourselves – himself – myself – itself) .**
11) Randa **(does – have got – has got- did)** a car .
12) Randa and Ola **(does – have got – has got – did)** a car .
13) Salah **(do – does – have got – is)** his work well .
14) Do you **(has – had – have – are)** a car ?
15) Does she **(has – had – have – are)** a bike ?
16) When does he **(goes – go – going)** there ?
17) Were you absent ? yes, I **(were – am – is – was).**
18) There isn't **(many – much – a few – an)** oil .
19) I **(am not – does not – do not)** like music .
20) He **(is not – does not – do not)** like music .
21) They always **(work – working – are working)** hard.
22) Whose pen is this ? It's **(Heba – Heba's – Hebas)** pen .
23) He **(drink – drinking – drinks – is drinking)** tea everyday at 5 p.m .
24) We usually **(swim – swimming – swims – are swimming)** in the summer .
25) They are (**play – playing – played)** tennis .

B- Compete :

A: Where are you going now ?
B: ………………………………… to school . 1

A: How are you going there?
B: ……………………………………………. 2

A: What do you study there?
B: ……………………………………………. 3

A: Do you like English ?
B: …………………. …………very much . 4

A: Are you good at Mathematics ?
B: …………………………… , but I'm good at Arabic. 5

A: How many subjects do you study?
B:…………………………………………………….. 6

A: When do you come back from school ?
B:……………………………………. at 2 p. m. 7

A: Does Rami go to school with you ?
B: ……………………………… and we study together. 8

A: Are you ready to go to the club now ?
B: ………………………………………. I'm going tomorrow . 9

A: Does Rami speak English well
B: …………………………………(10). , but he is very good at mathematics .

A: ………………………………………. ? 11
B: Yes, I'm studying mathematics.

A: ………………………………………. ?12
B: No , it isn't raining now .

A: ……………………………………..….. ? 13
B: I study mathematics every evening.

A: ………………………………………. ? 14
B: She lives in Giza .

A: ……………………………………… ? 15
B: They work in a school .

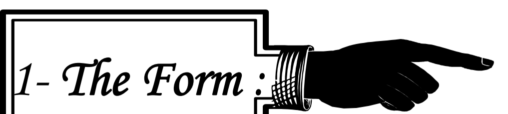
بعض تصريفات الافعال

الافعال الشاذة			
مضارع		ماضى	التصريف الثالث
يذهب	go	went	gone
يفعل – يؤدى	do	did	done
يفعل – يؤدى	does	did	done
يجرى	run	ran	run
تسطع	shine	shone	shone
اكون	am	was	been
يكون	is	was	been
يكونوا	are	were	been
يملك	have	had	had
يملك	has	had	had
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يفكر – يعتقد	think	thought	thought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يعلم	teach	taught	taught
يصارع يحارب	fight	fought	fought
يعطى	give	gave	given
ياكل	eat	ate	eaten
يطير	fly	flew	flown
ينمو يكبر	grow	grew	grown
برسم	draw	drew	drawn
يرمى	throw	threw	thrown
تهب	blow	blew	blown
يعرف	know	knew	known
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يسوق	drive	drove	driven

افعال عادية افعال يضاف لها ed أو d عند تحويلها للماضى			
مضارع		ماضى	التصريف الثالث
يلعب	play	played	played
يزور	visit	visited	visited
يشاهد	watch	watched	watched
يسأل	ask	asked	asked
يطهى	cook	cooked	cooked
ينظر	look	looked	looked
يعمل	work	worked	worked
يقيم	stay	stayed	stayed
يتعلم	learn	learned	learned
يساعد	help	helped	helped
يضيف	add	added	added
يموت	die	died	died
يعيش يسكن	live	lived	lived
يصل	arrive	arrived	arrived
ينهى	finish	finished	finished
يزرع	plant	planted	planted
يصلح	mend	mended	mended
ينظف	clean	cleaned	cleaned
يامل	hope	hoped	hoped
يتمنى	wish	wished	wished
يدخن	smoke	smoked	smoked
يحب	like	liked	liked
ينقذ	Save	saved	saved
ينجح	succeed	succeeded	succeeded
ينجح في	pass	passed	passed
يدرس	study	studied	studied
يحاول	try	tried	tried

مضارع		ماضى	التصريف الثالث	مضارع		ماضى	التصريف الثالث
يتحدث	speak	spoke	spoken	يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يركب	ride	rode	ridden	يقابل	meet	met	met
يكتب	write	wrote	written	يتعلم	learn	Learnt(ed)	Learnt(ed)
يرتفع	rise	rose	risen	يحلم	dream	dreamt dreamed	dreamt dreamed
ينشأ	arise	arose	arisen	يقطع	cut	cut	cut
يستيقظ يوقظ(up)	wake	woke	woken	يضع	put	put	put
يصحو – يوقظ	awake	awoke	awoken (ed)	يقرأ	read	read	read
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen	يتكلف	cost	cost	cost
يقرص- يعض	bite	bit	bitten (bit)	يفقد	lose	lost	lost
يكسر	break	broke	broken	يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen	يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten	يشنق	hang	hanged	hanged
يقع	fall	fell	fallen	يهزم	beat	beat	beaten
ياتى	come	came	come	يخبىء- يختبىء	hide	hid	hidden (hid)
يصبح	become	became	become	يدفع(مبلغ)	pay	paid	paid
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk	يعد المائدة	lay	laid	laid
يبدأ	begin	began	begun	يكذب	lie	lied	lied
يسبح	swim	swam	swum	يضطجع– يقع	lie	lay	lain
يغنى	sing	sang	sung	يجد	find	found	found
يرن	ring	rang	rung	يفشل	fail	failed	failed
يغوص	sink	sank	sunk (sunken)	يقول	say	said	said
يعلق	hang	hung	hung	يبحر	sail	sailed	sailed
يحصل على	get	got	got	تمطر	rain	rained	rained
يرى	see	saw	seen	يتابع	follow	followed	followed
يحفظ – يحتفظ بـ	keep	kept	kept	يتذكر	remember	remembered	remembered
ينام	sleep	slept	slept	تذكر	remind	reminded	reminded
يتهجى	spell	spelt	spelt	يمانع	mind	minded	minded
يقضى ينفق	spend	spent	spent	يذوب	melt	melted	melted
يترك	leave	left	left	يتكلم	talk	talked	talked
يرسل	send	sent	sent	يطعم	feed	fed	fed





*يتكون الفعل في زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل .

ذهبوا خارج المنزل   ذهب لخارج المنزل

Ex : He went out . They went out .

لعبت جيداً   لعب رامى جيداً

Rami played well . I played well.

2- The Key words :

yesterday **امس** - last **الماضى** (week **الاسبوع** - month **الشهر** – summer **(الصيف)**) - ago **منذ** – in the past **في الماضى** - in ancient times **في الازمنة القديمة** - a long time ago **منذ وقت طويل** - Once **ذات مرة** - One day **في احد الايام**)

3- The Usage : الاستخدام

يستخدم الفعل في زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن انتهاء حدوث فعل ما ..

Ex :

1- I met Reda yesterday .
2- They visited Tanta a week ago .
3- One day, there was a girl called Cindrella .

. في احد الايام كان يوجد بنت تدعى سندريلا.



Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(help – helped – helping – helps)** an old man yesterday .
2- They **(help – helped – helping – helps)** her with her homework everyday .
3- We **(visit – visits – visited – visiting)** Tanta last winter .
4- Sameh **(studies – study – studying – studied)** his lesson everyday .
5- She **(cook – cooked – cooks – cooking)** lunch 2 hours ago .
6- They **(played – play – are playing – playing)** now.

7- They usually **(played – play – are playing – playing)** football on holidays .
8- We **(buy – buying – bought – buys)** a new car 2 weeks ago .
9- She **(cooks – cook – cooked – is cooking)** now .
10- Once , there **(is – were – was – are)** a fisherman called Zaki .
11- Noha sometimes **(gets – get – getting – got)** up early .
12- I **(does – do – doing – did)** my homework yesterday .
13- They **(cook – cooked – are cooking – cooking)** rice at this moment .
14- We **(swam – swim – swimming – are swimming)** in the sea every summer .
15- He never **(smoke – smoking – smokes – smoked)** .
16- We **(eat – eating – eats – ate)** some ice-cream yesterday .
17- Look ! They **(catch – are catching – catches – caught)** fish .
18- He **(fly – flying – flew – is flying)** many planes 20 years ago .
19- I finished my homework and **(watch – watched – watching – an watching)** TV .
20- He reads books and **(plays – play – played – playing)** ping pong **.**

تابع زمن الماضى البسيط
How to answer كيف نجيب

أ- إذا بدا السؤال بالفعل Did

في الاجابة الكاملة على سؤال يبدا بـ did
1- نحذف did **عند الرد بـ** Yes
2- ثم نكتب باقى الجملة مع تحويل الفعل الى ماضيه

Ex :
Did he play well ?
كاملة * Yes, he played well .
مختصرة * Yes , he did .

*** في الاجابة المختصرة : عند الرد بـ** Yes **نجرى عملية تبديل الفعل والفاعل بين** did **والفاعل فقط .**

2- Did you meet Sami ?
كاملة * Yes, I met Sami .
مختصرة * Yes , I did .
3- Did they visit Luxor ?
كاملة * Yes, …………………………………………………… .

مختصرة * Yes , …………………..

4- Did you buy a book ?

كاملة * Yes, ………………………………………………………… .

مختصرة * Yes , ……………………….

5- Did you help them ?

كاملة * Yes, ………………………………………………………… .

مختصرة * Yes , ……………………………….

6- Did they come ?

مختصرة * No, they didn't . (عند النفى تستخدم did مع وضع not بعدها)

كاملة * No, they didn't come .

7- Did you finish your work ?

مختصرة * No, I didn't .

كاملة * No, I didn't finish my work .

8- Did he arrive ?

مختصرة * No, ………………… .

كاملة * No, …………………………………… .

9- Did you visit your uncle ?

مختصرة * No, ………………… .

كاملة * No, …………………………………….. .

10- Did you sell your bike ?

مختصرة * No, ………………… .

كاملة * No, …………………………………….. .

<u>* ب- إذا بدأ السؤال باداة استفهام :</u>

في الاجابة الكاملة :
1- تحذف الاداة + did
2- نكتب باقى الجملة مع تحويل المضارع الى ماضيه
3- الرد

<u>Ex :</u>

1- Where did Rami go ?

كاملة * He went to school .

مختصرة * To school .

2- How did they go ?

كاملة * They went by car .

مختصرة * By car .

3- What did you buy ?

كاملة * I bought a pen .

مختصرة * A pen .

4- When did she come ?

كاملة * ……………………………………………… yesterday .
مختصرة * ……………………………..

5- How much meat did you buy ?
كاملة * I …………………………………………………. 2 kilos.
مختصرة * ……………………………

6- How did you play ?
كاملة * ………………………………………………………. well .
مختصرة * …………………………… .

7- When did you do your work ?
كاملة * ……………………………………………………. .
مختصرة * …………………………..

8- What did you have for lunch ?
كاملة * ………………………………………………….. .
مختصرة * ………………

How to ask كيف نسأل

أ- إذا بدأت الاجابة بـ Yes أو No :

1- تم حذف yes 2- ثم نستخدم Did لان الفعل (visited) ماضى
3- باقى الجملة مع اعادة الماضى لمضارعه .

Ex :

1- Yes, he visited Tanta .
* Did he visit Tanta ?

2- Yes, she cooked well
* Did she cook well ?

3- Yes , I studied well .
* ………………….. study …………. ?

4- Yes, I played well .
* ………………….. ……………..…. ?

5- Yes , they built a new house .
* ………………….. ……………..…. ?

6- Yes, he travelled alone .
* ………………….. ……………..…. ?

1-حذف (no + not) .
2- تبديل الفعل والفاعل

7- No, he didn't come .
* Did he come ?

8- No, I didn't meet them .
* Did you meet them ?

9- No, she didn't cook lunch .

* …………………………………… ?

10- No I didn't find the book .

* …………………………………… ?

11- No, I didn't finish my work .

* …………………………………… ?

12- No, he didn't do it himself .

* …………………………………… ?

ب – إذا لم تبدأ الاجابة بـ Yes أو No :

Ex :

1- نبدأ بأداة الاستفهام المناسبة .
نضع did ثم الفاعل ثم الفعل الاصلى في مضارعه

1- He came yesterday .

* When did he come ?

2- She came by taxi .

* How did she come ?

3- They played football .

* …………………………………… ?

4- He stayed in a hotel .

* …………………………………… ?

5- I went there by plane .

* …………………………………… ?

6- I bought some new clothes .

* …………………………………… ?

7- She cooked lunch well .

* …………………………………… ?

8- They saw a new car .

* …………………………………… ?

Exercises

(1)

A- Where did you go ?

B- ……………(1) ………….. to Port Said .

A- ……………(2)……………….. ?

B- I bought some new clothes .

A- How did you go there ?

B- ……………(3) ………… by train .

A- …………….. (4) ………............ ?

B- Yes , I stayed in a hotel .
A- How long did you stay there ?
B- ……………..(5)………………..
A- Do you go there every week ?
B- …………….(6) ………… every month .
A- ……………(7) ………………..?
B- Yes, Ramzi goes with me .
A- What does he do there ?
B- …………..(8) …………. some new clothes .
A- ………….. (9) ………………….. ?
B- We sell them in our shop .
A- Is it near your house ?
B- ………….. (10) ……….. . I go there on foot .

(2)

A: Where did you go yesterday ?
B: …………..(1) …………… to Giza .
A: ………… (2) ………… ?
B: I went with my father .
A: How did you go there ?
B: …………. (3) ………….. .
A: ………….(4)…………… ?
B: I visited the Pyramids .
A: Did you enjoy ?
B: …………. (5) ……….very much .
A: ……………..(6) ………………… ?
B: I stayed in a hotel .

B- Write similar sentences :

1- He visited his uncle yesterday .

I …………………………………………………… .
They ……………………………………………….. .
She ………………………………………………… .

2- He made the food himself.

I ………………………….. ………………….. .
They ……………………………………………….. .
She ………………………………………………… .
We ………………………………………………...

3- He studies English well .

She ……………. food…. ……………. .
I …………… …Arabic ……………… .
They ……….. ….fish ………………… .
Sameh …………football ……………. .

4- He studied English well .

She …………… food …………. .. ……
I …………… …Arabic ……….. ……...
They ……….. …fish ………….. ……..
Noha ……… …ping pong ……… ….

5- He is studying English now .

She …………………………… food now .
I …………….…………… Arabic now .
They ……………………... fish now .
We ……….…………. in the sea now .
You ……………. ………football now .

C- Correct the verbs in brackets .

1- He **(get up)** early everyday .
* ……………………………………..
2- They (**visit**) Tanta last week .
* ……………………………………..
3- She (**clean**) her room now .
* ……………………………………..
4- I (**buy**) some clothes a week ago .
* ……………………………………..
5- I (**study**) my lessons every day .
* ……………………………………..
6- They (**leave**) at the moment .

D- Use the words between brackets to make a correct sentence :

1- He has got a new car . **(They**)
* ……………………………………..
2- There is a new house . **(houses)**
* ……………………………………..
3- I met my friends yesterday **.** **(We)**
* ……………………………………..

4- I was in London last summer. **(We)**

* ………………………………………..

5- He studied his lessons well . **(They**)

* ………………………………………..

6- I study my lessons well . **(We**)

* ………………………………………..

7- I finish my work early . **(She)**

* ………………………………………..

8- How much oil is there ? (**books**)

* ………………………………………..

9- I have tea at 5 p.m . **(don't)**

* ………………………………………..

10- How many cars are there **?** **(mi**lk)

* ………………………………………..

11- He speaks English well . **(yesterday**)

* ………………………………………..

12- 1 watched a film yesterday . **(now**)

* ………………………………………..

13- They are playing football . (**usually**)

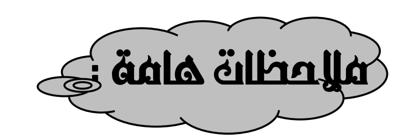
* ………………………………………..

14- He is reading a book now . (**sometimes**)

* ………………………………………..

15- She doesn't like music . **(likes)**

* ………………………………………..



1- Would you like bananas or dates ?
* Bananas .

في حالة وجود or في السؤال لا نرد بـ Yes أو No

2- Which is faster, a train or a plan ?
* A plan .

ب- 

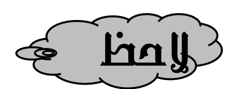
<u>للسؤال عن فاعل أو مفعول عاقل :</u>

<u>Ex:</u>

1- **Who** came ? **من اتى**
Reda came .
2- **Who did** you meet ? **من الذي قابلته**
* I met **Reda** **قابلت رضا**



1- **Reda** came .
Who came ?
2- I met **Reda** .
Who did you meet ?



انه عند السؤال عن فاعل لا يستخدم الفعل المساعد في السؤال .

2- عند السؤال عن مفعول .. يستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل .

<u>Ex :</u>

1- **They** met Sameh .
* **Who** met Sameh ?
2- They met **Sameh** .
* **Who did** they meet ?
3- **Farmers** grow crops .
* **Who** grow crops ?
4- **A pilot** flies a plane .
* **who** flies a plane ?
5- **She** helped an old woman .
Who helped an old woman ?
6- She helped **an old woman** .
* **Who did** she help ?

7- **He** helps the poor .
* ……………………………… ?
9- He helps **the poor** .
* ……………………………… ?
10- **He** asked the policeman .
* ……………………………… ?
11- He asked **the policeman** .
* ……………………………… ?
12- He went with **his uncle** .
* ……………………………… ?
13- **A carpenter** makes chairs .
* ……………………………… ?
14- **A mechanic** mends cars .
* ……………………………… ?

What **للسؤال عن فاعل أو مفعول (غير عاقل)**

1- **A cow** gives us milk .
* **What** gives us milk ?

2- A cow gives us **milk** ?
* **What does** a cow give us ?

لاحظ **نفس حالة** **who**

وعند 1- السؤال عن فاعل لا يستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل .
2- عند السؤال عن مفعول يستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل .

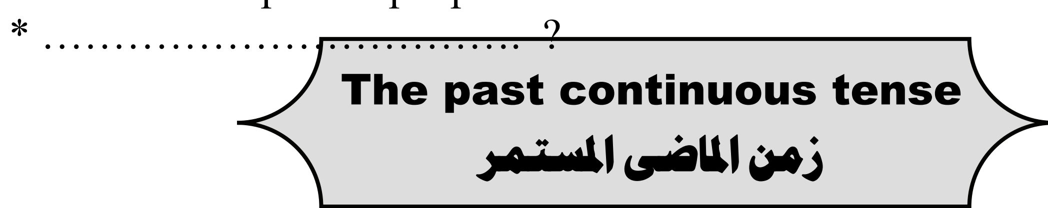
3- **A rabbit** gives us meat .
* ……………………………… ?

4- A rabbit gives us **meat** .
* ……………………………… ?
5- **A goat** gives us meat .
* ……………………………… ?
6- A goat gives us **meat** .
* ……………………………… ?



7- **A nurse** helps sick people .

* ………………………………. ?

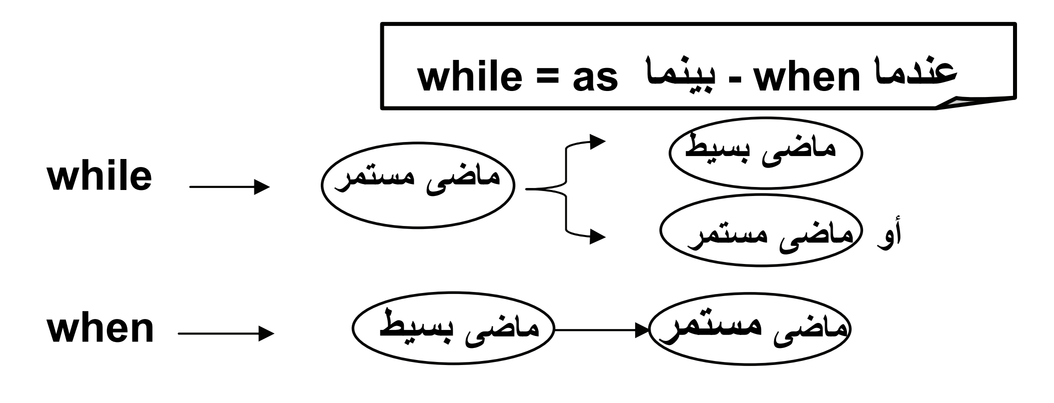


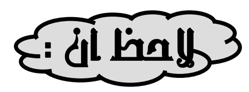
1- *The Form :*

was
or were + to المصدر بدون + ing

2- *The Key words :* **الكلمات التى يستخدم معها**

while = as بينما - when عندما





When زمن الفعل الذي يلى While يختلف عن زمن الفعل الذي يلى*

Ex :

1- While we were playing , it rained .

= It rained while we were playing .

2- When it rained , we were playing .

We were playing when it rained .

3- While we were playing , the builders were building a hospital .

4- The builders ……………………………………………………… .

5- While we were playing , it rained .

6- …………..they ……………………………………. .

7- ………….. I ……………………………………….. .

8- ………….. he ………………………………………… .

9- …………. Zidan …………………………………… .

10- When it rained , we were playing .

11- ………….they …………………………………… .

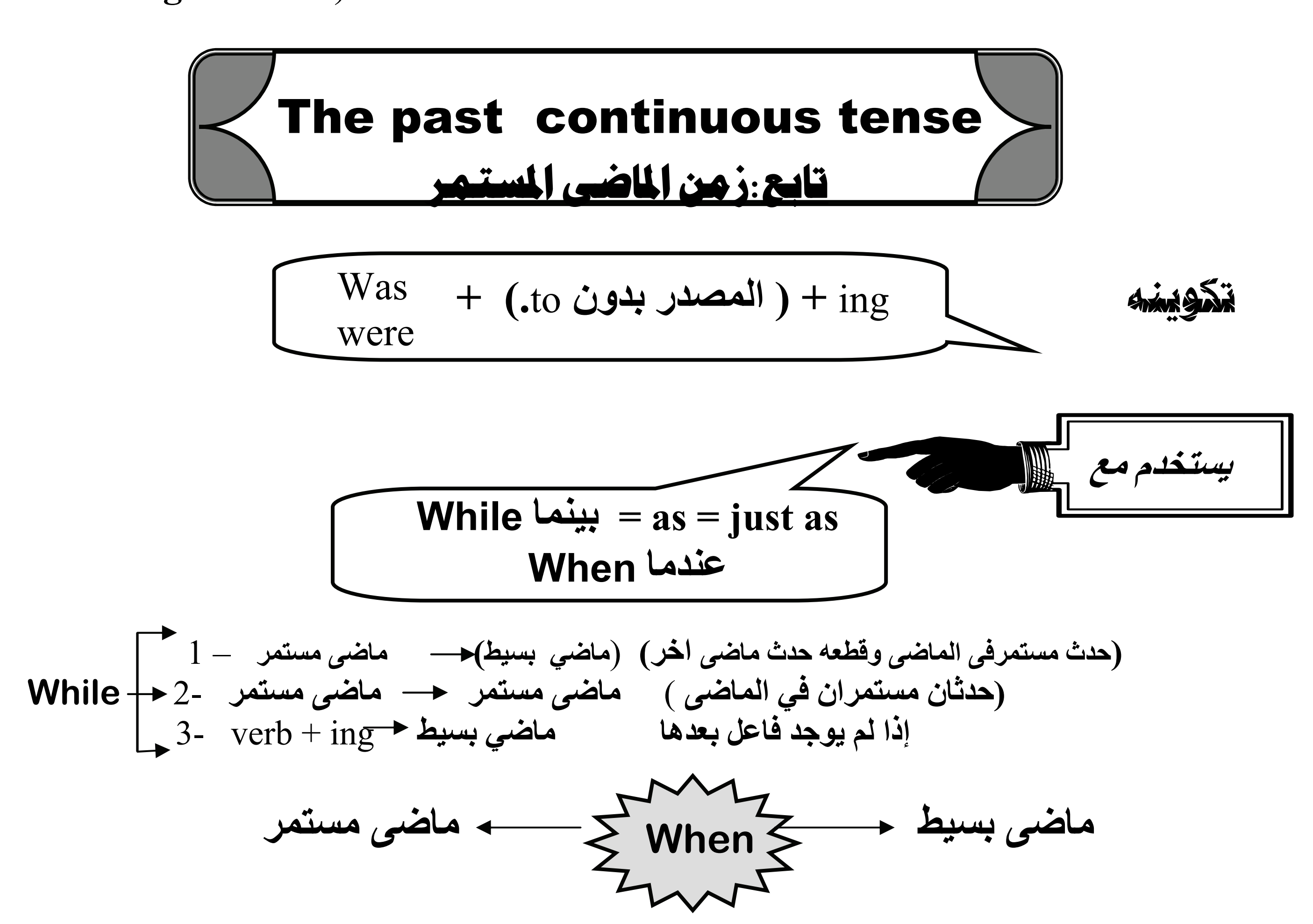
12- ………….. I ………………………………………… .

13- ………….. he ……………………………………… .

14- …………. Zidan ……………………………………. .
15- While we were playing , Sami was working .
16- ……… they ………… , …………………………… .
17- ……… I …………… , …………………………… .
18- ……… he ………….. , …………………………….. .
19- ……… Zidan ……….. , …………………………… .
20-……… Samir ………… , they ……………………… .
21-……… Samir and Rami ………. , …………………… .

Choose the correct answer :

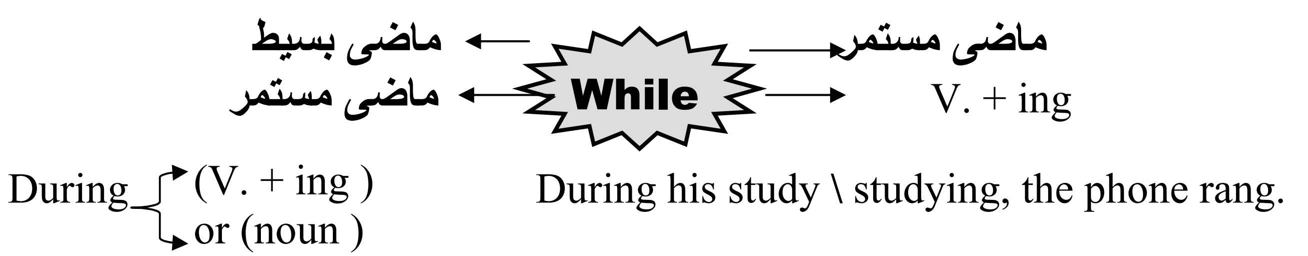
1- While they were watching TV, I (**study – studying – was studying – studies)** .
2- When he (**coming – came – comes – will come**) they were watching TV.
3- As I was reading a book , the phone (**rang – ring – ringing – rings**) .
4- They were watching TV when Adel (a**rrives – arrive – arriving – arrived**) .
5- The door bell rang while we (**was watching – were watching – watching – watch**) TV.



Ex :

1- While we were playing , it rained .
2- While we were playing , it was raining .
3- While playing , it rained .
4- We were playing when it rained .
5- It rained when we were playing .
6- It rained while we were playinag .
7- It rained while playing .

لاحظ ما يلى :

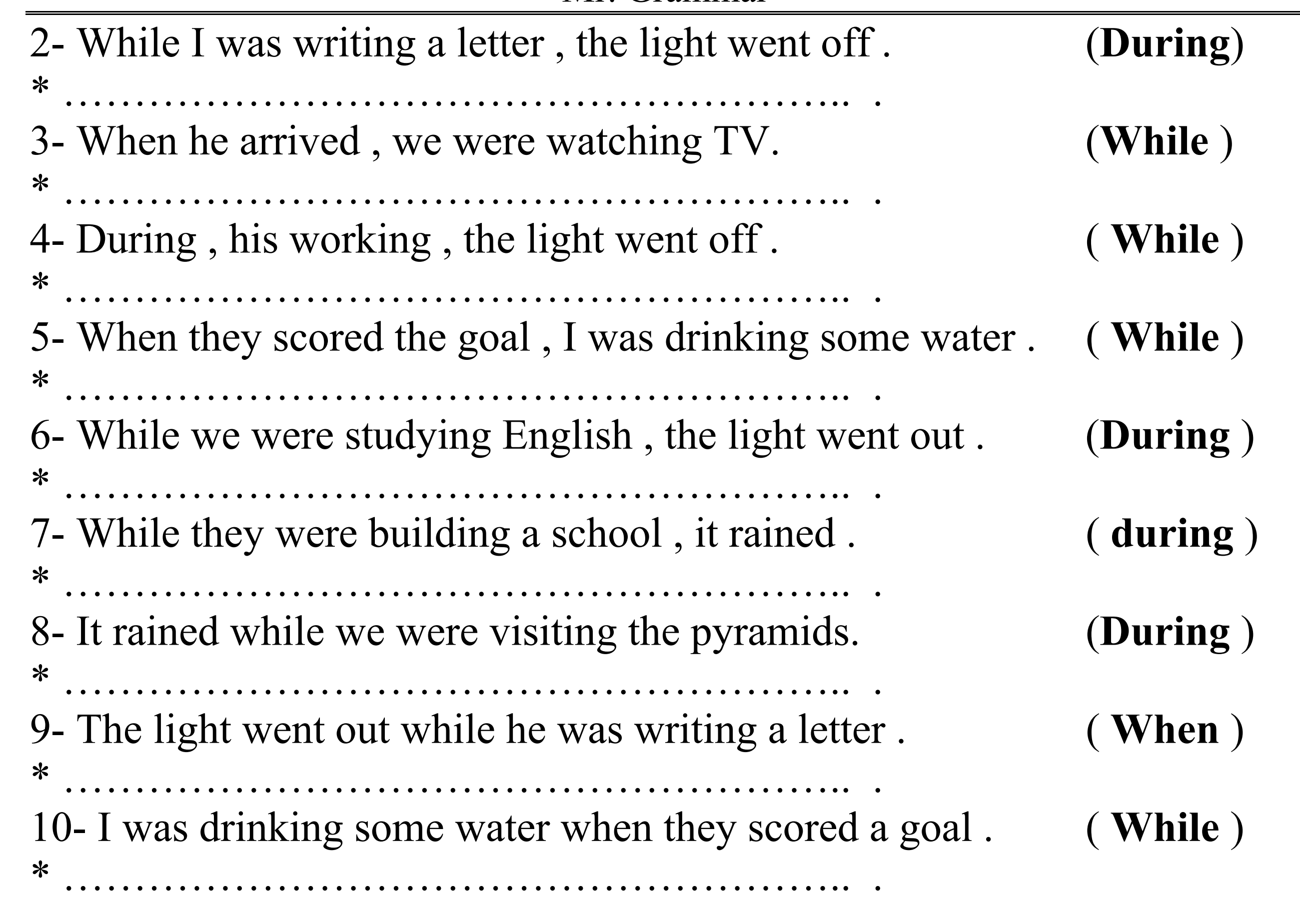


لاحظ ما يلى :

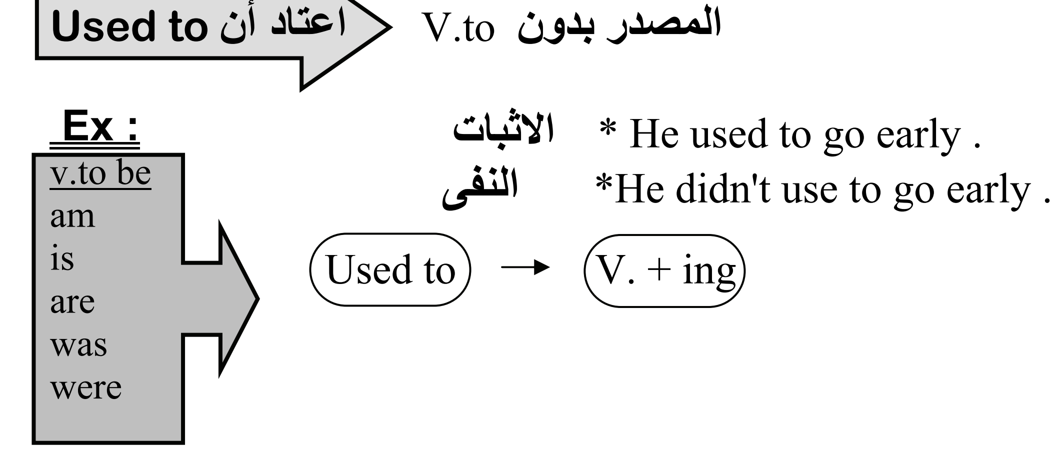
1- While we were playing , it rained .
= While playing , it rained .
2- While they were playing, it rained .
= While ………………………………………………………….. .
3- While he was reading , his friends arrived .
= While ………………………………………………………….. .
4- While we were playing, it rained .
* During our playing , it rained .
5- While he was reading , his friends came .
* During ……………………………………………………… .
6- While I was fishing , my cap fell in the water .
* During ……………………………………………………… .
7- While they were reading , the light went off .
* During ……………………………………………………… .
8- While she was studying , the light went off .
* During ……………………………………………………….. .

Use word(s) between and make a correct sentence :

1- While they were studying , the light went out . **(When)**
* ……………………………………………….. .



2- While I was writing a letter , the light went off . **(During)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
3- When he arrived , we were watching TV. **(While)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
4- During , his working , the light went off . **(While)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
5- When they scored the goal , I was drinking some water . **(While)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
6- While we were studying English , the light went out . **(During)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
7- While they were building a school , it rained . **(during)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
8- It rained while we were visiting the pyramids. **(During)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
9- The light went out while he was writing a letter . **(When)**
* …………………………………………………….. .
10- I was drinking some water when they scored a goal . **(While)**
* …………………………………………………….. .



Ex : * He is used to going early .

Choose:

1- They used to (plays – playing - play) football.

2- They are used to (plays – playing - play) football.

3- They didn't use to (plays - playing - play) football.

4- We didn't (used - use - using) to play football.

5- I'm used to (plays – playing - play) football.

The future simple tense
زمن المستقبل البسيط

1- The Form : التكوين

(سوف) **shall** **or** **will** + (to **الفعل في المصدر بدون**)

I will = I'll
I shall = I'll
He will = He'll
I will not = I won't
I shall not = I shan't

Ex :
1- I shall visit Tanta .
= I will visit Tanta .
2- He will visit Tanta .
3- They will visit Tanta .

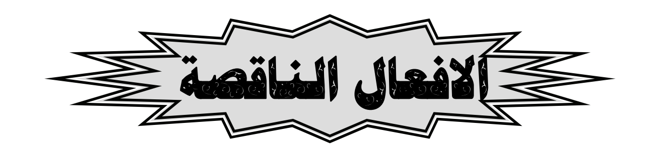
2- The key words : *الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط*

Tomorrow **غداً** - next **القادم** (week **اسبوع** - month **شهر** - ………..)
In the future **في المستقبل** - soon **قريباً** .

3- The Usage : الاستخدام

يستخدم الفعل في زمن المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن أن فعلاً سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

Ex :
1- I will visit Tanta tomorrow .
2- They will buy a car next summer .
3- I'll go to Luxor next year .
4- In the future , there will be more people .



*ياتى بعدها الفعل في المصدر بدون to .

**لها تصريفان على الأكثر .

مضارع		ماضى	مضارع		ماضى
يستطيع	can	could	يجب أن	has to	had to
سوف	shall	should	يجب أن (ينبغى أن)	should	had to
سوف	will	would	يجب أن	must	had to
ربما	may	might	ينبغى أن	ought to	
يجب أن	have to	had to			

<u>Ex :</u>

1- He can climb that tree .
2- He could climb that tree .

*يأتى بعد الفعل الناقص- سواء كان مضارعاً أو ماضياً - يأتى الفعل في المصدر بدون to

<u>Ex :</u>

1- He has to go early .
2- He had to go early .
3- You must (studied – study) hard .
4- You had to (studied – study) hard .

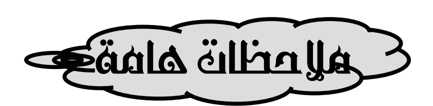
تابع : المستقبل البسيط والافعال الناقصة

<u>Choose the correct answer :</u>

1- I (**go – will go – went - goes)** to London tomorrow .
2- I (**go – will go – went – goes**) to London every summer .
3- He (**go – will go – went – goes**) to London every summer .
4- He can (**spoke – speaking – speak – speaks**) 5 languages .
5- They should (**visits – visit – visiting – visited**) their sick friend .
6- They **(go – goes – went – will go**) to Luxor last week .
7- I might (**meet – met – meets – meeting**) Rami .
8- They (**meet – meeting – are meeting – met**) him now .
9- In the future , we (**need – will need – needed – needs**) more food .
10- Where does he (**live – lives – lived – living**)?

Complete:

A: Where will you go next month ?
B: ………………..………… to Giza . (1)
A: …………… ………………..?(2)
B: I will go with my family .
A: How will you go there ?
B: ………… ………………………….. . (3)
A: ………….. ……………………….… ? (4)
B: We will visit many places .
A: Where will you stay ?
B: ………….. ………………….………….. . (5)
A: ………….. ……………………………….. ? (6)
B: We will stay for two weeks .



1- لا تستخدم افعال العاطفة والحواس في الزمن المستمر

Say	**Don't say**
1- I can see a tree. (✓)	I'm seeing a tree (x) .
2- I like reading (✓)	I'm liking reading (x) .

2- من افعال الحواس والعاطفة :

Like **يحب** - dislike **لا يحب** - hate **يكره** – love **يحب** - smell **يشم** - see **يرى** - feel **يشعر** - understand **يفهم** - think **يعتقد** – **يفكر** - remember **يتذكر** - wish **يرغب** - know **يعرف** - want **يريد** - need **يحتاج** - taste **يتذوق** - hear Believe **يصدق** - mean **يقصد أويعنى** - prefer **يفضل**

3- تستخدم الأفعال السابقة مضافا **ing** إذا سبقهابعض حروف الجرأو بعض الأفعال.

Ex:

1- I like smelling flowers.
2- Listen carefully for understanding what has happened.

Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(like – liking – likes**) music .
2- They (**wanting – want – wants**) to meet Mr. Adly now .
3- They (**read – reading – are reading – reads**) books now .
4- What (**are you meaning – do you mean – will you mean**) ?
5- It (**tastes – taste – is tasting**) of onions.

6- I don't like (**see- seeing - sees - saw**) the poor crying.
7- Tongues are used for(**taste – tasted – tasting - tastes**) .

Correct the verbs between brackets :

1- Hurry up اسرع ! The train (come) .
2- Look ! The horse (run) .
3- Noha (feel) better now .
4- He (swim) in the sea yesterday .
5- Adel (want) to visit Aswan .

تابع المستقبل البسيط و الافعال الناقصة

How to answer كيف نجيب

أ- إذا بدأ السؤال بفعل :

1- Yes أو No
2- تبديل وضع الفعل والفاعل

Ex :

1- Will they visit Tanta ?
كاملة * Yes, they will visit Tanta .
مختصرة * Yes , they will .
2- Will they buy a car ?
كاملة * Yes , ………………………… .
مختصرة * No , they won't . (won't = will not)

لاحظ وضع not بعد will

4- Will he go out ?
كاملة * No, …………………………….. .
مختصرة * No, …………………….. .
5- Will you go out ?
كاملة * No , …………………………… .
مختصرة * No , …………………… .
6- Will you stay at home ?
كاملة * Yes , ……………………… .
مختصرة * Yes , ………………… .
7- Will you buy a new car ?
كاملة * yes , ………………………….. .
مختصرة * Yes , …………….. .
8- Can you speak English ?

كاملة * Yes , …………………………… .
مختصرة * Yes , ……………. .

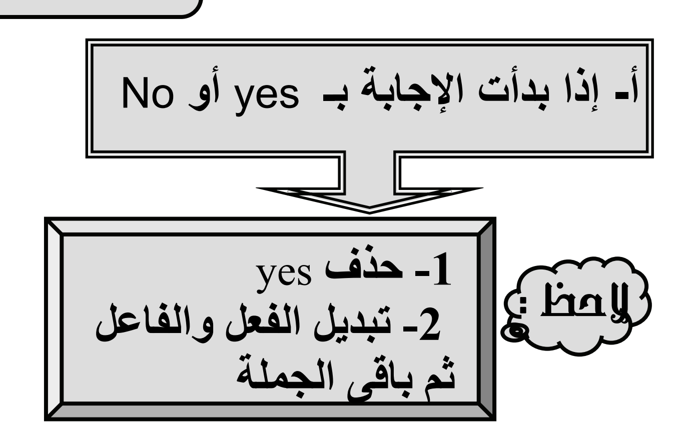
9- Can you speak Italian ?
كاملةNo, ………………………………. .
مختصرة No, ……………….. .
10- Could they win the match ?
كاملة No , ………………………………. .
مختصرة No , ………………. .
11- Could they open the box ?
كاملة Yes, ……………………………… .
مختصرة Yes , ………………… .

ب- إذا بدأ السؤال باداة الاستفهام :

1- حذف الاداة
2- تبديل الفعل will والفاعل
3- الرد

Ex :
1- What will they buy ?
كاملة * They will buy a new car .
مختصرة * A new car .
2- How will they go ?
كاملة * ……………………….. by bus .
مختصرة * ………………. .
3- When will you go ?
كاملة * …………………………. tomorrow .
4- Where will you go ?
كاملة * ……………………..…. to Giza .
مختصرة * ………………… .
5- What will you read ?
كاملة * ………………………… a story .
مختصرة * ……………………. .
6- How can he go ?
كاملة * ………………………… by car .
مختصرة * ……………………. .

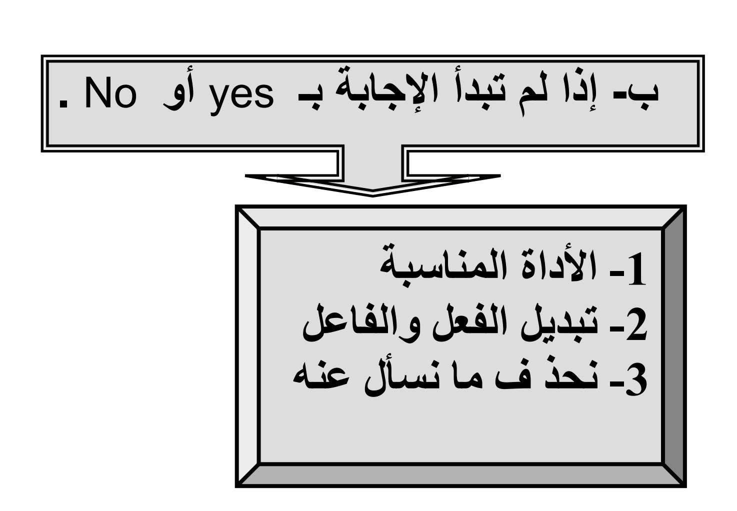
How to ask



Ex :

1- Yes , he will go there .
* Will he go there ?

2- Yes , they will buy a car .
* ………………………….. ?
3- Yes, I will go alone .
* ………………………….. ?
4- Yes , I will visit my uncle .
* ………………………….. ?
5- Yes, she will visit her uncle .
* …………………………… ?
6- No , he will not come tomorrow .
* Will he come tomorrow ?
7- No, they will not buy a lorry .
* …………………………… ?
8- No , I won't meet my friends
* ……………………………. ?
9- No, I won't go there .
* …………………………….. ?
10- No, she can't go there .
* ………………………….. ?



Ex :

1- He will go tomorrow .
- When will he go ?

2- They will buy a car .
* ……………………………. .
3- She will go by bus .
* ……………………………… ?

4- I will go by taxi .
* ……………………………… ?
5- I will go by taxi .
* ……………………………… ?
6- I can help Reda .
* ……………………………… ?
7- He could buy ten loaves .
* ……………………………… ?



1- I will go to London .
2- I'm going to go to London .
3- I'm going to London .
4- When does the flight to London leave ?

<u>في الامثلة السابقة :</u>

1- عندما نقرر شىء وقت التحدث . (كما فى المثال الأول).
2- عندما نكون قررنا شىء ولم نرتب له أو عندما توجد دلالات قوية على قرب حدوث شىء. (كما فى المثال الثانى)
3- عندما نكون قررنا شىء ورتبنا له . (كما فى المثال الثالث).
4- يستخدم (المضارع البسيط) للسؤال عن مواعيد ثابتة في المستقبل . (كما فى المثال الرابع).

<u>Ex :</u>

1- He is going to buy a car .
2- They are going to buy a car .
3- I'm going to buy a car .
4- Rami ……………….. a car .
5- Rami and his brother …………….. a car .
6- Noha ……………………………… a car .
7- I'm going to Tanta .
8- They ……………………………………… .
9- He ………………………………………… .
10- We ……………… to Tanta .
11- The train leaves at 7 a.m tomorrow .

12- The bus ……………..……………………………………… .
13- The plane …………… ………………………………….. .

A:Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(leaves – leaving – is leaving – left**) for Cairo tomorrow .
2- I (**go – am going – will – going**) to study hard .
3- Rami and Rada (**go – are going - will – going**) visit Luxor next week .
4- She (**leaves – leaving – will leave – left**) for Cairo yesterday .
5- Reham (**leaves – leaving – will leave – left**) for Cairo tomorrow .
6- The train (**arrived – arrives – arrived – arrive – will arrive**) at 10 p.m tomorrow .
7- I (**visit – am visiting – visited – visits**) my uncle next week .
8- I (**visit – am visiting – visited – visits**) my uncle last week .
9- I (**visit – visits – visited – will visit**) my uncle next week .
10- They (**are going – will – is going – am going**) to visit Giza next winter .

B: Complete :

A- Where are you going now ?
B- (1)……………………………..………… to Giza .
A- (2)……………………………………………………………….. ?
B- I will go by train .
A- Will you go alone ?
B- (3)……………………………………………….. with Rami .
A- …………… (4)…………………………………………………….. ?
B- We will stay in a hotel .
A- How long will you stay ?
B- (5)……………………………………………………………….
A- (6)…………………………………………... ……………..?
B- We will come back by bus .
A- (7)………………………………………………………………… ?
B- No, I won't go with my friend, Rami .
A- (8)………………………………………………………………… ?
B-Yes,I'll call you .

C:correct the verbs between brackets :

1- He (go) to Aswan tomorrow .
* ……………………………………………………………………….
2- I (swim) in the sea next month .

* ……………………………………………………………………

3- They (meet) their friends yesterday .

* ……………………………………………………………………

4- She usually (cook) lunch at 2 p.m .

* ……………………………………………………………………

5- Rami sometimes (fish) in the afternoon .

* ……………………………………………………………………

6- He (fish) at this moment .

* ……………………………………………………………………

7- They (drink) tea everyday at 5 p.m .

* ……………………………………………………………………

8- I (study) my lessons at the moment .

* ……………………………………………………………………

9- He (catch) fish every Friday .

* ……………………………………………………………………

10- They (catch) fish next week .

* ……………………………………………………………………

****

The present perfect tense
زمن المضارع التام

1- The form

or Has / Have + الثالث للفعل P.P

Ex:

1- He has gone out . لقد خرج
2- They have gone out .
3- I …………………… …………………a car .
4- She ……………………………………… a car .
5- We ……………………………………… a car .
6- You …………………………………….. a car .
7- Sameh ………………………………….. a car .

2- The Key words : الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام

(already فعلاً بالفعل - just منذ قليل - ever من قبل - never ابداً – yet حتى الآن - for لمدة – since منذ) – (so far حتى الآن - up till now = up to now – recently حديثاً - lately اخيراً)

3- The usage : استخدام

<u>يستخدم الفعل فى زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن :</u>

أ – حدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة جداً :

<u>Ex :</u>

1- He has just left . لقد رحل منذ قليل
2- They have just arrived . لقد وصلوا منذ قليل

ب – حدث وقع في الماضى ولا يزال له تاثير حتى الآن .

<u>Ex :</u>

1- I have lost the key . ⟶ I can't open the door now
2- He has found a treasure . ⟶ He is very happy now .
3- I have never traveled by air .
4- I have bought a car recently .

حـ- عند التحدث عن فترة زمنية من الماضى حتى لحظة التحدث .

5- Have you **ever** flown a plane ? **هل سبق لك أن قدت طائرة ؟**

6- No, I have **never** flown a plane .

لاحظ : تحويل ever الى never عند النفى .

Ex :

1- They have already finished their work .

2- He ………………………………………… .

3- I ………………………………………… .

4- Heba ………………………………………… .

5- She hasn't finished her work yet .

6- Rami ………………………………………… .

7- They ………………………………………… .

8- I ………………………………………… .

9- We ………………………………………… .

لاحظ أن yet تأتى في نهاية جملة منفية وقد تأتى في نهاية سؤال .

****

Since

أ – إذا أتى في جملتها فعل واحد يكون في المضارع التام

Ex :

1- He has left Alex since 2000 .
2- I haven't seen Reda since 2000 .
3- She ………………………………………… 2000 .
4- Ramzi ……………………………………… 2000 .
5- They ………………………………………… 2000 .
6- Noha ………………………………………… 2000 .

ب – إذا أتى في جملة since فعلان

فما بعد since ⟵ past tense **ماضى بسيط والآخر مضارع تام .**

Ex :

1- I haven't seen Reda since he left Alex .
2- Hend …………………………………………………………….. .
3- Kamal ……………………………………………………………..
4- They ……………………………………………………………..
5- We ………………………………………………………………
6- Since Reda left Alex , I haven't seen him .
7- …………………………………, She …………………………….. .
8- ……………. Heba …………… , we ……………………………. .
9- …………. Heba and sami ………. , I …………………………….. .
10- ………….. Sameh ………… , Rami …………………………….. .

Since منذ – for لمدة - ago منذ

Since	For	Ago	
مضارع تام	مضارع تام	ماضى بسيط	الزمن
Since 2000 (بداية الفترة) (بعدها)	For 2 years (محددة) (بعدها)	2 years ago (محددة) (قبلها)	الفترة الزمنية

Ex :

1- He has studied English for 5 years .

2- ……………………………………….. since ……………
3- ………………………………………………………. ago .
4- I learned English 2 years ago .
5- ………………………………………. for ………………
6- ……………………………… ……..since ……………
7- They have built the factory for 3 years .
8- …………………………………………………………. ago .
9- ……………………………………….. since ……………

Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(have bought – has bought – bought**) a car lately .
2- I (**have bought – has bought – bought**) a car lately .
3- They (**didn't come – hasn't come – haven't come**) yesterday .
4- They (**didn't come – hasn't come – haven't come**) yet .
5- He has just (**travel – travelled – travels- travelling**) .

Exercises

1- Choose the correct answer :

1- So far , I (**sent – have sent – has sent**) her two letters .
2- He (**phoned – is phoning - has phoned**) twice since spring .
3- I have bought a new computer (**later – scarcely – yet – recently**) .
4- I haven't worn that coat (**ago – since – for**) years .
5- He is away, I don't know where he (**was gone – has gone to – has been to – is going**) .
6- Have you ever (**visited – been – be**) to the pyramids ?
7- You are here . Where have you (**been- gone – went**) ?

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning .

1- My uncle phoned us a minute ago . **(just**)
2- I went to Aswan and came back . (**have**)
3- It's a long time since he wrote to me . **(for**)
4- We last phoned him when he was in the hospital . **(haven't**)
5- It hasn't rained here for years . **(The last time**)
6- I haven't played tennis for a week . **(The last time**)
7- I have been to Italy . **(went**)
8- He hasn't visited Egypt for a long time . **(since**)

The present perfect continuous
زمن المضارع التام المستمر

{تكوينه :}

Has
Or
Have
+ been + V. + ing

{استخدامه}

يعبر عن بدء حدوث فعل منذ فترة وإلى الآن وقد يستمر في المستقبل .

{يأتي مع الكلمات}

- (for ………. Still) – (Since ………. Still)

(all+ فترة زمنية) - How long

مع التام والتام المستمر ولكن يفضل التام المستمر

Ex :

1- This man has been selling papers since he was 21 .
2- He has been sleeping for ten hours now .
3- They have been playing all day long .
4- How long have you been learning English ?

لاحظ : لو حدد في الجملة عدد مرات وقوع الحدث نختار المضارع التام

Ex :- He has written five reports since last night .

****



Exercises

A- Choose the correct answer :

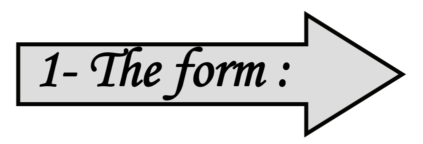
1- I haven't been swimming **(since – ago – for**) last summer .
2- I first met her a long time (**since – ago – for**) .
3- She hasn't been to Cairo (**since – ago – for**) many years .
4- Have you eaten anything (**since – ago – for**) this morning ?
5- He became a teacher (**ago – in – for – since**) 1995 .
6- He (**is played – had played – has been playing**) tennis since he was young .
7- They have been waiting (**for – since – before – after**) you phoned .
8- I (**have used – have been using – have been used**) the computer for a year now .
9- These curtains need (**be clean – to be cleaned – to be clean**)

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning .

1. He worked in that factory 10 years ago . (**for**)
2. They visited London last summer . (**haven't**)
3. He joined the police on his twenty-first birthday and he is still a police officer . (**since**)
4. It's five days since he saw me . (**ago**)
5. He worked in a hotel from 1995 to 1998 . (**for**)
6. How long (**study**) English ? **(correct the verb)**

****

The past perfect tense
زمن الماضى التام

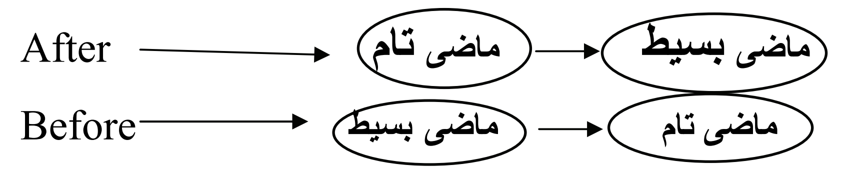


Had +(p.p التصريف الثالث للفعل)

2- The key words :

يستخدم مع الكلمات الاتية :

A- After after . (after **بعد**)
B- Before before . (before **قبل**)
C- By the time **قبل** = Before (**نفس القاعدة**)
D – By **قبل** ⟶ **ياتى معها فعل واحد في زمن الماضى التام**
As soon as **بمجرد أن** = After(**نفس القاعدة**)



لاحظ : أن الفعل بعد After **يختلف عن الفعل بعد** Before **.**

Ex :

1- After I had studied , I watched TV .
= I watched TV after I had studied .
2- Before I watched TV , I had studied .
= I had studied before I watched TV.
3- By the time I …………………… , I …………………………….. .
4- By the time I was 6 years old , I had learned how to read .
5- By the time they ……………………………………………….. .
6- By the time we ……………………………………………………
7- By the time he ……………………………………………………
8- …………….. …………she ………………………………………….
9- After I had studied , I watched TV .
10- After they ……………………………………………………… .

11- After we …………………………………………………………………

12- After he …………………………………………………………………

13- I had studied my lessons before I watched TV .

14- We ……………………………………………………………………..

15- They ……………………………………………………………………

16- He ………………………………………………………………………

17- She ………………………………………………………………………

18- As soon as I had studied , I watched TV.

19- As soon as he …………………………………………………………..

20- As soon as they …………………………………………………………

Choose the correct answer :

1- After we **(finished – finish – had finished)** our work , we went back home .

2- Before he **(finished – finish – had finished)** his work, he had had lunch .

3- By the time I (**am – was – were – had been**) 10 years , I had learned how to ride a bike .

4- By 10 o'clock, I (**catch – caught – had caught – have caught**) 10 fish.

5- Rami (**leaves – leave – left – had left**) home after he had finished his homework .

6- They (**leaves – leave – left – had left**) home before Sameh arrived .

7- They (**learned – had learned – learning – learns**) how to read by the time they were 6 years old .

8-He (**wrote – writes – had written – writing**) 5 letters by 6 o'clock .

9- As soon as he (**finished – had finished – finishes – finishing**) his work , he slept .

10- Our friends arrived as soon as we (**went – gone – had gone – go**)out .

Use the word(s) between brackets and make a correct sentence:

1- After they had arrived , they phoned us (**Before**)

* ………………………………………… .

2- He had studied before he went out (**After**)

* ………………………………………… .

3- Before she went out , she had finished her homework . (**After**)

* ………………………………………… .

4- He visited Tanta after he had come back . (**Before**)

* ………………………………………… .

5- He finished his work . Then , he watched TV. **(As soon as)**

* ………………………………………… .

6- We studied our lessons . Then , we went out . **(Before)**

* ………………………………………… .

7- Zidan got up and washed his face . **(As soon as)**

* ………………………………………… .

8- They finished their study . Then , they went abroad . **(Before)**

* ………………………………………… .

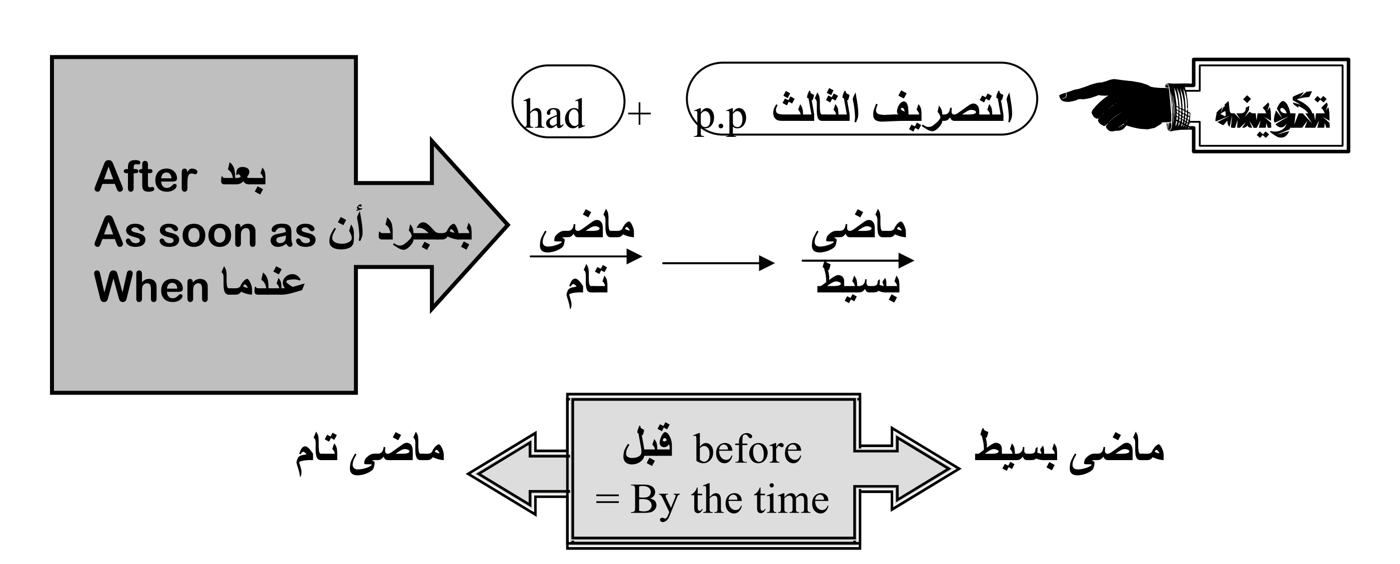
9- Hoda cleaned her teeth and went to bed . **(After)**

* ………………………………………… .

10- We studied our lessons . Then , we went out . **(Before)**

* ………………………………………… .

F.The past perfect tense
تابع زمن الماضى التام



Ex : * First, he watched the film , then he went to bed . **(After)**

- After he had watched the film, he went to bed . **(Use the gerund)**
- After watching the film , he went to bed .

لاحظ أن : **P.P** اختصار للتصريف الثالث للفعل.

After → V. + ing → ماضى بسيط

Ex :

1- First, he watched the film , then he went to bed . **(before)**
- Before he went to bed , he had watched the film . **(use the gerund)**
- Before going to bed , he had watched the film .

2- First, he ate , then he went out . **(before)**
- He had eaten before he went out .

= Having eaten , he went out .

Before → V. + ing → ماضى تام

No sooner …… than
Hardly ……….. when حتى ……….. لم يكد
Scarcely ……… when

Had → no sooner → (p.p الـ 3) **than →** (ماضى بسيط)

No sooner → had → (فاعل) → (p.p الـ3) **than →** (ماضى بسيط)

Ex :

1- She graduated . She got married . **(no sooner ……)**

* She had no sooner graduated than she got married . **(No sooner ….)**
* No sooner had she graduated than she got married .

2- Compare قارن :

A . When he arrived at the party , Rami left .
B. When he arrived at the party, Rami had left .
A. (Rami left the moment he arrived .) **غادر رامى بعد أن وصل**
B. (Rami left before he arrived .) **غادر رامى قبل أن يصل**



Ex : She didn't go shopping till she had finished the housework .

Exercises

A. choose the correct answer :

1- What were you doing when I **(phoned- had phoned – phoning – would phone)**?
2- He fell down and broke his leg while (**was playing – played – playing – play**) football .
3- While I was watching TV my brother (**did – doing – was doing – had done**) his homework .
4- When I was on holiday, I (**was playing – play – played – playing**) tennis everyday .
5- I always (**play- plays – played – playing**) in the street when I was young .
6- They (**begin – began – have begun – beginning**) to learn English four years ago .
7- As the thief (**got – was getting – getting – has got**) into the bus , the police caught him .
8- I (**did – have done – had – was doing**) my homework when the telephone rang .
9- At the time my father arrived , we (**played – were played – were playing – had played**) chess .
10- I (**had – have had – have – was having**) a bath when the phone rang.
11- He told me that he (**has – had- has had – is**) already sold his flat .
12- I phoned you as soon as he (**will arrive – arrives – had arrived – has arrived).**
13- He didn't receive the letter I (**has sent – have sent – would send – had sent**) him two weeks ago .
14- I was very unlucky because when I arrived at the station , the train (**left – leaving – had left**) .
15- No sooner (**he had written – had he written – he wrote**) the letter than he posted it .

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1- We were having supper and suddenly the doorbell rang . **(While)**
2- The light went out as he was studying . **(While)**
3- When I was on holiday, I went to the library everyday . **(used to)**
4- During walking to school , I saw an accident . **(When)**
5- During the rain , he drove into a tree . **(Just as)**
6- I left the house and then the rain started . **(before)**
7- He didn't go abroad until he had got his degree. **(As soon as)**
8- We went for a walk as soon as we had finished work. **(until)**
9- I didn't know about his success before meeting him . **(After)**
10- He felt sick from eating too much canned food . **(By the time)**
11- He didn't go shopping before he did his homework . **(Having)**
12- After the tailor had taken my measurements he cut the material . **(Having)**
13- Immediately after taking off, the plane crashed. **(No sooner)**
14- After I had studied, I slept. **(till)**
15- It stopped raining and immediately the match started . **(As soon as)**
16- After finishing his exams , he left for Cairo . **(He didn't)**

****

Revision(4)

A- Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(is – was – were – are)** in London two years ago .
2- They (**study – studies – studying – are studying**) Arabic every year .
3- There aren't (**a – an – some – any**) books .
4- He (**study – studied – studying**) his lessons yesterday .
5- Kamel sometimes (**study** – **studied – studies – studying**) on Friday .
6- They (**study – studies – studying – are studying**) now .
7- This is the farmer (**which - who – whose**) grew many crops .
8- I met the man (**which – whose – who**) son got the full mark .
9- This is the cow (**which – whose - who**) gives us milk .
10- A cow is **(big – biggest – bigger**) than a cat .
11- Saleh is the (**tall – tallest – taller**) one in our school .
12- We need to buy more eggs . There are (a **few – few – many – much**).
13- How (**many – little – much – few**) is this shirt ?
14- They (**are – was – were – is**) in Paris last year .

B- Use the word(s) between brackets and make a correct sentence :

1- There is a box outside. (**five**)
* ……………………………….. .
2- I was in London . (**We**)
* ……………………………….. .
3- I bought a knife . (**two**)
* ……………………………….. .
4- I have got a new watch . (**two**)
* ……………………………….. .
5- Rami has got a loaf . (**five**)
* ……………………………….. .
6- My school is near my house . (**Our**)
* ……………………………….. .
7- She has visited many places . (**They**)
* ……………………………….. .
8- He mended the car himself . (**They**)
* ……………………………….. .
9- I did my homework myself . (**We**)

* ……………………………….. .

10- They study their lessons themselves . **(He**)

* ……………………………….. .

C- Complete :-

(1)A- Where is Mr. Sameh ?
B- ……………..…………….. ……..at school . (1)
A- ………… ……………………………….. ? (2)
B- He teaches English .
A- Is it near his house ?
B- ………… ……………..... . He takes a taxi to go there . (3)
A- …………………………………….……….. ? (4)
B- Yes , his brother works there too .
A- What does he teach ?
B- ……………. …………………………..…… Arabic . (5)
A- …………… ……………………………. ………. ? (6)
B- Yes , they go to school together .
****

(2)A- Where were you yesterday ?
B- ………………..……………………………. in Giza . (1)
A- …………………………………………………. ? (2)
B- I visited the pyramids
A- How did you go ?
B- …………… …………………………….…. by train . (3)
A- …………… ……………………………………….. ? (4)
B- I went with my uncle .
A- When did you come back ?
B- …………… …………………………… in the evening . (5)
****

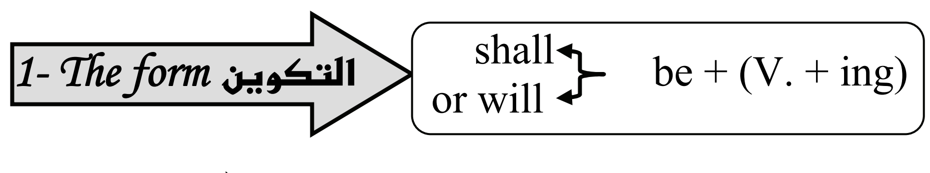
(3)A- Did you visit Cairo ?
B- ………………………………………………. and Giza . (1)
A- …………………………………...……………….. ? (2)
B- No, I didn't stay in a hotel .
A- Where did you stay ?
B- ………………………………… at my uncle's house . (3)
A- ………… ………………………………………………… ? (4)
B- I stayed for a week .
A- Did you visit the Cairo Tower ?

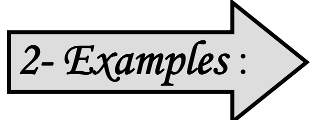
B- …………………………..………. , but I will do next winter . (5)
(4)A- Where is Amre ?
B- ………… (1) ……. at school .
A- ………… (2) …………… ?
B- Yes, it is near his house .
A- Are you in a school ?
B- …………. (3)…………. and I study some subjects .
A- ………….. (4)…………. ……….?
B- My favourite subject is Arabic .
A- Is your school large or small ?
B- …………… (5) ……………..

D:Choose:

1- Look at **(a – an – the)** blackboard .
2- Give me **(a – an – the)** cup of tea, please .
3- Would you like to have (**a – an – the**) orange ?
4- Give me (**a – an – the**) book which you took yesterday .
5- Where is Rami ? He went to **(a – the – an**) Red Sea .
6- Where did he (**play – playing – played – plays**) ?.
7- When does he (**play – playing – played – plays**)?.
8- How do they (**play – playing – played – plays**) ?.
9- (**This – Those – That**) are books .
10- There isn't (**many – an – any – a**) oil .
11- (**Much- A lot of – A little**) people like football .
12- I haven't got (**much – many – few**) money .

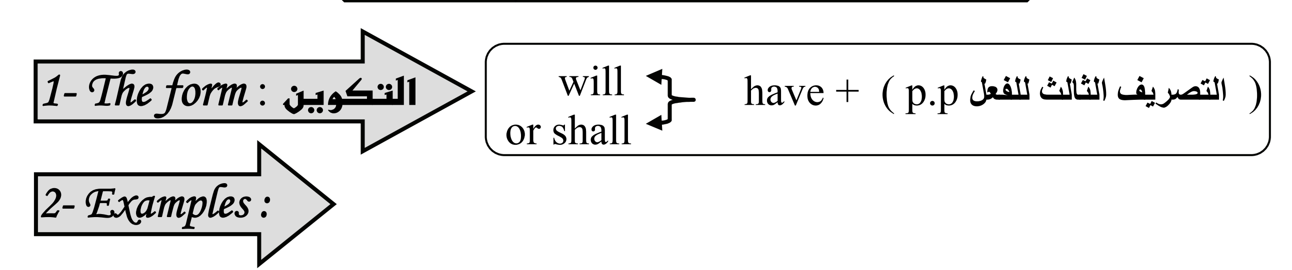
The future continuous Tense
المستقبل المستمر





1- At this time ,next week , we will be studying English .
2- I shall be watching TV all day tomorrow .
3- They will be working all tomorrow morning .

The future perfect tense
زمن المستقبل التام



1- By next July , I'll have finished my exams .
2-They will have completed their study in a year's time .
3- This time next year , I'll have finished my exams .

* Correct the verbs between brackets :

1- All day tomorrow , he (read) a story .
* ………………………………………… .
2- By next autumn , they (build) the factory .
* ………………………………………… .
3- She (cook) mahshi at this time , next Friday .
* ………………………………………… .
4- I (study) many subjects this time next year .
* ………………………………………… .
5- Ayman (join) the army by next May .
* ………………………………………… .
6- Noha (read) the newspaper all tomorrow morning .
* ………………………………………… .

Modal verbs

(can – could) – (may – might) – (will – would) – (shall – should)
- must – should – have to – has to – (ought to) – be able to

Usage الاستخدام

1- Ability : القدرة

- (in the present or future) ⟶ (can / be able to) + infinitive.

Ex :

1- He can type sixty words a minute .
2- She is able to play the piano .
3- He will be able to pay you next week .

(In the past) ⟶ could / was (were) able to (+ infinitive)

Ex :

1- He could swim at the age of six .
2- He was able to save the drowning man .

2- Possibility : إمكانية **(in the present or future)**

Ex :

They may (might / could) be at home now .
* (could / may / might) (+ infinitive)

- In the past

* (could / may /might) (+ have + p.p)

Ex :

He looks miserable , he could / may / might have lost his job .

3- Probability : احتمال

- in the present or future:

* should / ought to (+ infinitive)

Ex : He should (ought to) pass the exam . (He will probably pass it)

- In the past :

Should / ought to (+ have + p.p)

Ex : He should (ought to) have phoned an hour ago .
(we don't know whether he phoned or not)

4- Deduction : استنتاج

Certainty	Present	Past
تأكد تام	**He is tired .** **He isn't tired.**	**He was tired .** **He wasn't tired .**
تأكد شبه تام	**He must be tired .** **He can't be tired .**	**He must have been tired .** **He can't have been tired.**
تأكد متوسط	**He may be tired .**	**He may have been tired .**
تأكد بنسبة ضعيفة	**He might be tired .**	**He might have been tired .**

- **Some important notes :**

1- He must be late . (deduction) .
= He can't be early .

2- You must go now . The traffic light is green .(Necessity and obligation)
* You mustn't go now . The traffic light is red .

3- You needn't go now . = It isn't necessary to go now .

4- You had to go yesterday .
* You didn't have to go yesterday .
(Obligation in the past)

5- Permission : الاستئذان

Can I ……… I ? Could I …….. ? May I …….. ?
Might I ………….?
Ex : Can I borrow your book ?
* Could I borrow your book ?

*** Remember that :**

must ⟶ mustn't (Obligation) and necessity
must ⟶ can't (deduction)

6- **Request** : الطلب

* Can ……. ? will …….. ? (Informal)
* Could ……. ? Would …….? May …… ? (polite / formal)

Ex : Can you help me ? Could you pass the sugar , please ?

7- Offer : عرض

* Will you ….. ?

Can I …….. ? could I ……. ?
Shall I post the letter for you ?

8- **Suggestion** : اقتراح

Can / shall / could
Ex : Shall we go for a walk ?

9- **Advice** نصيحة:

shall / should / ought to / had better
Ex : 1- I think you should see a doctor .
2- You'd better go early .
3- You shouldn't have lied to your parents .

10- **Necessity** : ضرورة

must / have to / need
Ex :
1- You must wash your car . (It' s too dirty .)
2- He had to leave early yesterday .
3- This room needs painting .

Have to تستخدم عند التعبير عن الضرورة أ والإضطرار

1- We have to take a taxi because we are late .
2- We had to take a taxi because we were late .
Have to = It is necessary to
Had to = It was necessary to
Ex :
1- **We** have to take a taxi because we are late . (necessary)
It is necessary to take a taxi because we are late.
2- We had to take a taxi because we were late .(necessary)
It was necessary to take a taxi because we were late.

11- **Absence of necessity** : عدم وجود ضرورة

* don't have to / haven't got to / don't need to .

Ex :

1- You don't have to take your coat . It isn't cold
2- You don't need to take your coat . It isn't cold .
3- You didn't have to take your coat . It wasn't cold
4- You needn't have bought the book . I've got one .

12- prohibition منع / تحريم

Must تستخدم عند التعبير عن الحظر أو التحريم

Ex :

1- You mustn't park here. There is a "No Parking" sign.
2-You must pay the fine.

Needs to be + P.P

نستخدم هذا الاسلوب عندما توجد ضرورة لعمل شيء ما وليس هناك داعى لذكر فاعله أو الشخص الذي يقوم به وهو شكل من اشكال الـ passive (المبنى للمجهول)

Ex :

1- The car is dirty . It needs to be washed .
2- He looks ill . He needs to be taken to hospital .





Ex :

1- The grass in the garden (need) cut later .
* The grass in the garden will need to be cut later .
2- They will need to buy more food . (be)
* More food will need to be bought .

****



A- Choose the correct answer :

1- He **(must go – must have gone – would have gone)** to hospital as he had great pain .
2- (**Will – Would – Can – Could)** you mind if I take your pen ?
3- (**Would – Could – Must – Have**) I borrow your camera for two days ?
4- The telephone rang, but I didn't hear it . I (**must be – must have – can't have - couldn't have**) been asleep .
5- That (**must be – can't be – may be – shall be**) Adel ! He looks too old .
6- You (**must be – must have – can't have – mustn't have**) driven for over 20 years . You are perfect .
7- His daughter joined the faculty of Medicine . She (**must – must have – must have been – must be**) clever .
8- That (**must be – can't be – may be – would be**) the postman .He never comes at that time of the day .
9- He (**had to – have to – has to – shouldn't**) get a passport before he goes abroad next month.
10- I (**had to – didn't have to – don't have to – have to**) leave the party early last night. I wasn't very well.

B: Rewrite using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1- He has to sell his car to buy a flat. (necessary)
2- He had to sell his car to buy a flat. (necessary)
3-They has to sell their car to buy a flat. (necessary)
4- They had to sell their car to buy a flat. (necessary)

5- I think she has come late because of traffic jams . **(must)**
6- I am very uncertain he traveled to the country . **(have)**
7- Perhaps my uncle went shopping . **(may)**
8- I was quite sure that he didn't commit this serious crime on purpose . **(can't)**
9- This building was almost certainly built before 1960 . (**must**)
10- We must cut down that old tree . (**needs to**)
11- They want to construct a swimming pool . (**need to**)
12- They radio hasn't been repaired yet . (**The radio needs**)

انواع S

1- He's a doctor. = He is a doctor .
2- He's gone out = He has gone out .
3- Rami's a doctor = Rami …… a doctor .
4- This is Rami's pen . الملكية (للمفرد)('s)
5- These are the students' book . الملكية للجمع (s')
6- She's a nurse . She (**has – is – does**) a nurse .
7- Noha's a teacher . Noha (**has – is – does**) a teacher .
8- (**Noha's – Noha is**) book is green .
9- It's time for reading . It (**has – is – does**) time for reading .
10- Rewan's finished her work . Rewan (**has – is – does**) finished her work .
11- Our (**friends – friend's**) pens are red .
12- This is (**Heba is – Heba's**) pen .
13- He plays well . (المضارعة S)
14- He speaks English well .
15- He like**s** watching play**s** .

المضارع الجمع

16- Rami (read) 2 (story) everyday .
* …………………………………….
17- Heba (study) 2 (lesson) everyday .
* …………………………………….
18- He (mix) different (colour) every day .
* …………………………………….
19- Sami ……… friend is good at English .
20- Noha ………… friends are good at Arabic .
21- She …….. already read a story .
22- Hoda ………… just come .
23- Hoda ……….. Tanta every summer .
24- Hoda …….. brother is called Kamel .
25- Two (family) are waiting outside .

ملاحظات على النفى

1- الأمر

Ex :

1- Open the door. Don't close it .
2- Come in . ……………go out .
3- Study hard . ……..……… play .
4- Walk slowly . …..………… run .
5- Wake up . ……………… sleep .
6- Do your best . …………. do bad things .

2- Some بعض (تحول الى **any** في النفى والاستفهام)

Ex : A

1- He bought some eggs .
* He didn't buy any eggs .
* He bought no eggs .
2- He studies some subjects .
* ………………………….. **(any)**
* …………………………. . **(no)**
3- They have written some letters
* ………………………….. **.(any)**
* …………………………. . **(no)**
4- They built some schools .
* ………………………….. **(any)**
* …………………………. . **(no)**
5- He will visit some countries .
* ………………………….. **(any)**
* …………………………. . **(no)**

B- something **شىء ما** – somebody **شخص ما** – someone

Ex :

1- He said something .
* He said nothing .
* He didn't say anything .

2- She bought something .
* …………………………………… (**anything**)
* …………………………………… (**nothing**)
3- They will sell something .
* ………………………….. (**no**)
* ………………………… . (**any**)
4- He is writing something . (**no**)
* ………………………….. (**any**)
* ………………………… .
5- She has cooked something. (**any**)
* …………………………………… **.** (**no**)
* ……………………………………. .
6- I saw somebody .
* I saw nobody .
* I didn't see anybody .
7- He met somebody .
* ………………………………… (**no**)
* ……………………………………. . (**any**)
8- They will meet someone .
* ………………………………… (**no**)
* ………………………………… (**any**)
9- I have met somebody .
* ………………………………… (**no**)
* ……………………………………. . (**any**)

ever ⟶ never -3

<u>Ex :</u>
1- Have you ever been abroad ?
No, I have never been abroad . (**No**)
2- Have you ever seen a lion **?**
*------------------------------------- **.**
3-Have they ever flown a plane **?**
* ……………………………… . (**No**)
4- Has he ever flown a plane **?**
* ……………………………… . (**No**)
5- Have you ever cooked rice ?

* ………………………………… . **(No)**

6- Has she ever flown a plane ?

* ………………………………… . **(No)**

(sometimes – always – often) ⟶ never

Ex :

1- I always get up early .

- I never get up early .

2- He sometimes gets up late . **(never)**

* ………………………………… .

3- They often work by day . **(never)**

* ………………………………… .

4- She always studies hard . **(never)**

* ………………………………… .

All – every – each

أ- إذا كان اى منهم في أول الجملة .. نضع not قبلها ونكمل باقى الجملة كما هى .

ب- إذا كان اى منهم في وسط الجملة تحذف ونضع no بدلا منها ، وتبقى الجملة كما هى .

حـ- يمكن نفى all باستخدام none of the بدلاً منها مع وضع الجملة في المفرد .

Ex :

1- Every player played well .

- Not every player played well .

2- Every farmer grew cotton . (**Not**)

* ………………………………… .

3- I saw all the players .

* I saw no players .

4- I met all the teachers . (**no**)

* ………………………………… .

5- He did all the jobs . (**no**)

* ………………………………… .

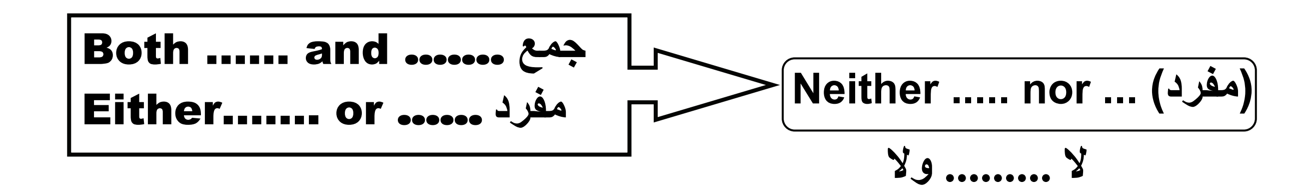
6- All boys like music .

* None of the boys likes music .

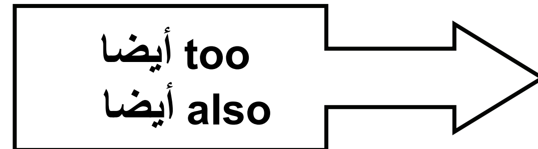
7- All boys are tall . (**None**)

* ………………………………… .

8- All girls are short . (**None**)
* ……………………………… . **Not**
* Not all girls are short .
9- All men are tall . (**None**)
* ……………………………… . (**Not**)
* ……………………………… .
10- All women are short . (**Not**)
* ……………………………… . (**None**)



Ex :
1- Both Arabic and English are easy .
* Neither Arabic nor English is easy .
2- Both Adel and Ihab are friends .
* Neither ……………………………… .
3- Both science and mathematics are difficult .
* Neither ……………………………… .
4- Both Noha and Heba cook well .
* Neither ……………………………… .
5- He is either a doctor or a teacher .
* He is neither ……………………………… .
6- She is either a nurse or a doctor .
* She is neither ………………………… .
7- He speaks either English or French .
* He speaks ………………………… .
8- Either Adel or Ihab is a doctor .
* Neither Adel nor Ihab is a doctor .
9- Either Noha or Amira is a nurse .
* Nether ……………………… .
10- Either Sami or Rami speaks French .
* Neither ……………………………… .
11- Either Adel or Basem plays tennis .
* Neither ……………………………… .



عند النفى either أيضا

Ex :

1- He plays tennis too . **(not)**

- He doesn't play tennis either .

2- She visited Tanta too . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

3- They bought a car also . (**not**)

* They didn't buy a car either .

4- They study English also . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

5- He works in a school too . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

6- They will go abroad also . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

7- She has been abroad too . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

`

وكذلك And so → and neither ولا

Ex :

1- He read a book and so did I . (**not**)

* He didn't read a book and neither did I .

2- They built a hospital and so did I . (**not**)

* …………………………… .

3- He studies English and so ……… I .

* ………………………….. and neither …………..

4- I work in a school and so ………. he .

* ………………………….. and neither …………..

5- He swam in the sea and so ……….. I .

* ……………………….. and neither …… I .

بالفعل Already → yet حتى الان

Ex :

1- I have already had my lunch . (**not**)

* I haven't had my lunch yet .

2- He has already written a letter . (**not**)

* ……………………………….. .

3- They have already finished their work . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .

4- She has already cooked rice . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .

5- I have already finished my homework. **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .

Used to { **used not to ………**
did not use to ……. }

Ex :

1- He used to smoke . **(not)**

* He used not to smoke .
* He didn't use to smoke .

2- They used to play football . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .
* ……………………………….. .

3- I used to eat sweets . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .
* ……………………………….. .

4- She used to play tennis . **(not)**

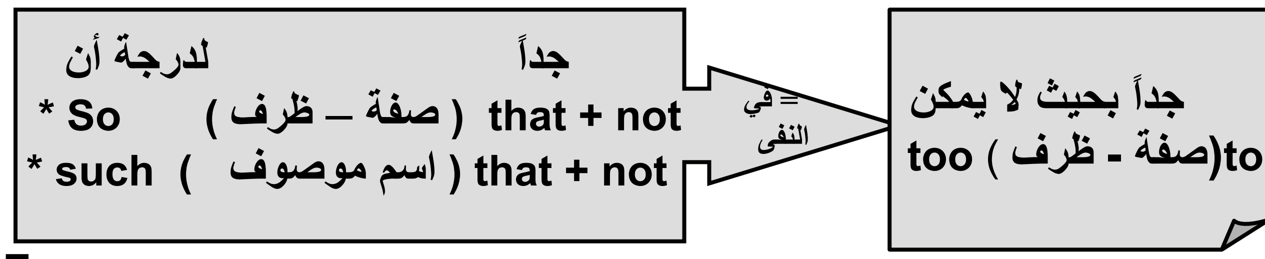
* ……………………………….. .
* ……………………………….. .

5- We used to phone them . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .
* ……………………………….. .

6- They used to travel abroad . **(not)**

* ……………………………….. .
* ……………………………….. .



Ex :

1- He was so old that he couldn't walk .

= He was too old to walk .

= He was such an old man to walk .
2- He is so weak that he can't walk .
= ………………. too …………… .
= ………………. such …………. .
3- They are so lazy that they …… walk .
= ……………… too …………….. .
= ……………… such …………… .
5- They were such poor people that they had one meal a day .
= …………………… so ……………. .
6- The weather was so nice that we went to the zoo . **(such that)**
* ………………………………………….. .
7- It was such an interesting story that I read it twice . **(so ……..that)**
* ………………………………………………….. .
8- He was so angry that he couldn't speak clearly **.** **(too)**
* ………………………………………………….. .
* …………………… such ……………………….. .

enough to بما يكفي

so (صفة – ظرف) that Such (اسم موصوف) that	= في الاثبات	(صفة) enough to بما يكفى

Ex :
1- I was so tired that I went to sleep .
= I was tired enough to go to sleep .
2- He was such a clever boy that he got full marks . (enough)
* ………………………………………………… .
3- She was so good that she did her work perfectly . (enough)
* ………………………………………………... .

till حتى - until حتى and و

Ex :
1- I waited <u>until</u> he came .
2- I study my lessons <u>and</u> watch TV everyday .
(ماضى – ماضى) **(مضارع – مضارع)** **(الفعلان في نفس الزمن)**

A:Choose :

1- He plays football and (**visit – visited- visits**) his uncle every Friday.
2- He speaks English (**quick – fast – slow**) .
3- He is (**quick – quickly**) enough to win the race .
4- He stayed till they (**finish – will finish – finished**) their work.
5- He is (**enough – too – to**) tired to study .
6- They didn't come (**also – neither – either**)
7- Why didn't he come (**too – also – either – neither**) ?
8- I will invite them (**too – either – neither**) .
9- Rami speaks English well . Sameh speaks English well (**too – either – neither**) .
10- They (**didn't come – haven't come – hasn't come**) since they left .
11- Before I met him , I (**finish – finished – had finished**) my work .
12- I did my home work 2 hours (**yet – ago – since – for**) .
13- I'm looking forward to (**see – saw – seeing**) you .
14- While he (**goes – was going – are going**) he met Reda .
15- As he (**goes – was going – are going**) he met Reda .
16- When he met Reda, he (**goes –was going – are going**) out .
17- You (**are – should – have – has**) study hard .
18- Alex is (**big – biggest – bigger)** than Tanta .
19- Cairo is the (**big – biggest – bigger**) city in Egypt .
20- Gold is (**more – the most**) expensive material .
21- They went out with Rami (**either – also – neither**) .
22- As soon as I had had lunch , I (**go – going – went**) out .
23- After (**had – had had – having**) lunch I (**go – going – went**) out .

B:Choose the correct answer :

1- He has stayed (**ago – since – for – yet**) 2 weeks .
2- They haven't travelled **(** **ago – since – for – yet**) 2002 .
3- He travelled 4 years (**ago – since – for – yet**).
4- There aren't (**much - many – a little – an**) eggs .
5- There are (**much – a little – a lot of – an**) eggs .
6- Are the books (**few – fewer - less – little**) than the students ?
7- There isn't (**a few – many – an – much**) ink .
8- What (**do – is – does – was**) he study ?
9- (**This – These – That – It**) are cars .
10- I have got (**any – an – some – a**) milk .

11- They usually (**grow – grows – grew – growing**) cotton together .
12- She (**finish – finishes – finished – finishing**) her study 2 years ago .
13- We (**are going – will – is going – are**) go to Cairo next week .
14- Samah (**studies – studied – study – studying**) her lessons everyday .
15- They have (**stay – stayed – staying – stays**) for 2 weeks .
16- He has (**stay – stayed – staying – stays**) for 2 weeks .
17- Rami has (**yet – ever – just – since**) left .
18- Open (**a – the – an – some**) door, please .
19- He gave me (**a – the – an – some**) piece of cake .
20- Would you like to have **(a – the – an**) ice- cream ?
21- This is the new shirt (**who – whose – which – where**) I bought last week .
22- This is the old man (who – whose – which – where) we met yesterday .
23- This is the old man (who – whose – which – where) son got the first place .
24- Alexandria is the place (who – where – when – which) I was born.
25- Students like the summer season (who – where – when – which) they are on holiday .

****

(The adverb) الظرف أو الحال

* الحال يصف فعل
* غالباً الحال أو الظرف هو ماتكون من (الصفة + ly)

الصفة	Adjective	Adverb	الظرف أو الحال
سريع	quick	quickly	بسرعة
بطئ	slow	slowly	ببطئ
حريص	careful	carefully	بحرص
مهمل	careless	carelessly	بإهمال
خطير	dangerous	dangerously	بخطورة
مرتفع (الصوت)	loud	loudly	بارتفاع
غاضب	angry	angrily	بغضب
مشغول	busy	busily	منشغلا
سهل	easy	easily	بسهولة
سعيد	happy	....	
جائع	hungry	....	
كسول	lazy	....	
جيد	good	well	بجودة
مجتهد	hard	hard	باجتهاد
سريع	fast	fast	بسرعة

A:Choose :

1- He is a careful man . He works **(careful – carefully – care)** .
2- He walks **(slow – slowly**) .
3- It runs **(quick – fast – slow**) .
4- He works **(good – bad – hard)** .
5- He works (**careless – carelessly**) .
6- He is a good writer . He writes (**good** – **well**) .
7- He is hard-working. He works (**hard** – **hardly**) .
8-He is a fast driver . He drives (**quick** – **slow** – **fast**).

Complete:

1- They could answer the easy question …………. .
2- A loud talker is someone who talks ……… .
3- A quick thinker thinks …………. .
4- A quiet speaker is someone who speaks ………
5 - Happy boys play ……. .
6- A bad driver drives …… .
7- A lazy worker is someone who works ……... .
8- A strong swimmer swims ……... .
9- A fast runner is someone who runs …..... .
10- A good worker is someone who works ……... .
11- A dangerous person acts …………. .
12- An active person acts ………… .

ملاحظات على المحادثات
(فعلان أو أكثر)

إذا أتى في السؤال أو الرد (فعلان) فلا نحتاج الى فعل ثالث

Ex :

1- Where have you been ?
* I have been to Luxor .
2- Where have they been ?
* ……………………… .
3- Where has she been ?
* ……………………… .
4- Where has Rami been ?
* ……………………… .
5- Where have they gone ?
* ……………………… .
6- Where have your friends been ?
* ……………………… .
7- Yes , they have finished their work .
* Have they finished their work ?
8- Yes , I have finished my work .

* ……………………………… ?

9- Yes , she has finished her work

* ……………………………… ?

10- Yes, Sameh has finished his work .

* ……………………………… ?

11- Yes, we have finished our work .

* ………………………………?

12- No, they haven't arrived yet .

* Have they arrived ?

13- No, I haven't arrived yet .

* ………………………….. ?

14- No, she hasn't arrived yet .

* …………………………. ?

15- No, Zidan hasn't arrived yet .

* ………………………….. ?

16- No, we haven't arrived yet .

* ………………….. ………………….?

17- Yes , They will arrive tomorrow .

* Will they arrive tomorrow ?

18- Yes, I will arrive tomorrow .

* ………………………………….. ?

19- Yes, she will arrive tomorrow .

* ………………………………….. ?

20- Yes, Sameh will arrive tomorrow .

* ………………………………….. ?

21- They will arrive tomorrow .

* When will they arrive ?

22- I will travel by bus .

* ………………………………….. ?

23- She will study Arabic .

* ………………………………….. ?

24- Zidan will stay in a hotel .

* ………………………………….. ?

25- I have got 2 brothers .

* ………………………………….. ?

26- They have got 3 cars .

* ………………………………….. ?

27- She has got 2 sisters .

* …………………………………….. ?

28- Zidan has got 2 cars .

* …………………………………….. ?

29- I have got 2 cars .

* …………………………………….. ?

30- I have learned English for 5 years .

* …………………………………….. ?

31- Heba can cook well .

* …………………………………….. ?

32- They can go by taxi .

* …………………………………….. ?

33- I can learn how to ride a horse .

* …………………………………….. ?

34- I'm going to visit my uncle tomorrow .

* …………………………………….. ?

35- I'm going to study Arabic ?

* …………………………………….. ?

<u>Correct the word(s) between brackets :</u>

1- He (sell) his car last week .

* …………………………………….. .

2- I (visit) my aunt next week .

* …………………………………….. .

3- She always (write) Arabic very well .

* …………………………………….. .

4- I usually (drink) tea at 5 p.m .

* …………………………………….. .

5- He (not like) drinking tea .

* …………………………………….. .

6- I (not go) out every Thursday .

* …………………………………….. .

7- Zidan (not work) in a school .

* …………………………………….. .

8- They (not spend) their time well .

* …………………………………….. .

9- He lives a small house . (They)

* …………………………………….. .

10- There is one mango . (two)

* …………………………………….. .

11- I met a man . He lives in Tanta . **(Who)**

* …………………………………….. .

12- I met a man . His son won the first place . **(whose)**

* …………………………………….. .

13- He lives in Tanta . He was born there . **(Where)**

* …………………………………….. .

14- We like the summer season . We are on holidays in summer . **(When)**

* …………………………………….. .

15- He lives near his school. **(I)**

* …………………………………….. .

16- They finish their work on time **(Rami)**

* …………………………………….. .

17- I study my lessons myself . **(He)**

* …………………………………….. .

18- He usually goes to his school early . **(tomorrow)**

* …………………………………….. . **(Last week)**

* …………………………………….. . **(now)**

* …………………………………….. . **(just)**

* …………………………………….. .

Complete :

A- Where have you been ?

B- ………….(1)………..to port Said .

A- ………… (2) ………………… ?

B- I went by train .

A- What did you do there ?

B- …………. (3) ……….. some new clothes .

A- …………………(4)…………. ?

B- I went with my uncle .

A- Where did you stay there ?

B- ………………(5) ………… .

A- ………………. (6) ………… ?

B- ……………… (7) ……. . I think, we will go next month .

A- ……………… (8) ……………………… ?

B- Yes , you can come with us .



(If لو – إن – إذا)
(Unless = if not إذا لم) if نفس قاعدة

1– الحالة الأولى :

أ- مع الحقائق العلمية والحقائق الثابتة

If water boils, it evaporates .

If ⟶ مضارع بسيط ⟶ مضارع بسيط

ب- في حالة احتمال حدوث فعل ما في المستقبل

If he comes, he will meet Reda.
= If he comes , he may meet Reda .
If ⟶ مضارع بسيط ⟶ (will – may – can) + (to المصدر بدون)

2– الحالة الثانية :

في حالة الشك في احتمال حدوث فعل ما أو غير محتمل الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر.

If he came , he would meet Reda .
If he came , he might meet Reda .

If ⟶ ماضى بسيط ⟶ (would – might – could) + (to المصدر بدون)

3– الحالة الثالثة :

عند التعبير عن استحالة وقوع حدث (جواب الشرط) في الماضى لعدم وقوع فعل الشرط.

If he had come early , he would have met Reda .

If ⟶ ماضى تام ⟶ (Would – might – could) Have + التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex :

1- If he had got up early , he could have caught the train .
2- If they (study) , they would have succeeded .
* ………………………………………………… .
3a- If she had come early , she (arrive) on time .
* ………………………………………………… .
3b- If he studied , he would pass the exam.
4- If they studied, ...
5- If she got up early , she (catch) the train .

* ……………………………………………… .

6- If he studies , he will pass the exam .

7- If she finishes her work , she (cook) lunch .

* ……………………………………………… .

8- If they (arrive) on time , they would meet Mr. Kamel .

Choose the correct answer :

1- Unless he (**come – came – comes**) early , he wouldn't met them .

2- Unless he (**finished – finishes – finishing – had finished**) his work , he wouldn't have gone out .

3- If they helped us , we (**would – will – would have**) finish on time .

4- If we had finished early , we (**would go – will go – would have gone**) out .

5- If he arrives on time , he (**would go – will go – would have gone**) out with us .

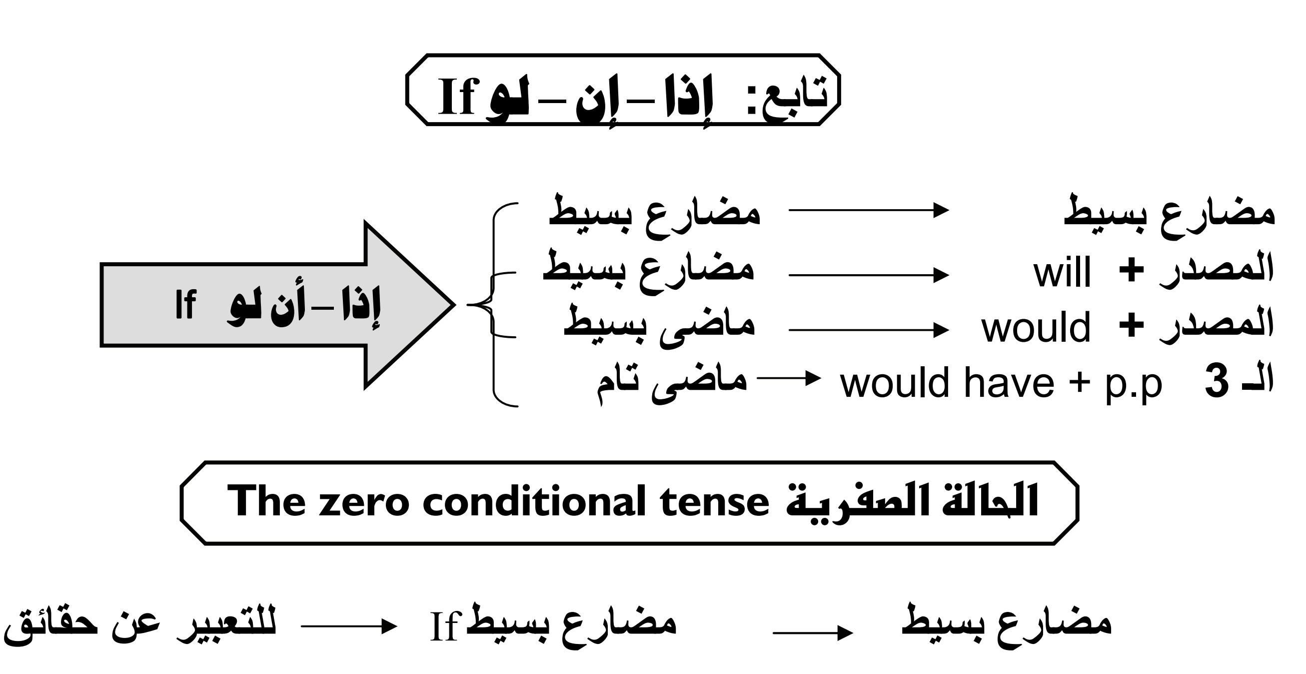
6- Unless they had a car , they (**would go – will – go – would have gone**) late .

7- If I (**has – have – had – had had**) the medicine , I would be better .

8- If she had called them , they (**can help – could have helped – could help**) her .

9- Unless Rami studied well , he (**won't pass – wouldn't have passed – wouldn't pass**) the exam .

10- Unless Noha (**arrived – arrives – had arrived**) on time, she could have missed the train .



Ex :

1- If water freezes , it turns into ice .
2- If you see Reda , give him a message for me .

The first conditional tense
الحالة الشرطية الاولى

للتعبير عن حدث محتمل وقوعه (If ⟶ مضارع بسيط ⟶ **will + to** المصدر بدون)

Ex :

1- If the sun shines , we will go to the beach .
2- He will catch the train if he gets up early .

The second conditional tense
الحالة الشرطية الثانية

(للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل أو مستحيل وقوعه في الوقت الحاضر) (غيرمحتمل وغير حقيقى)

If⟶ **ماضى بسيط** ⟶would + to **المصدر بدون**

Ex :

1- If I were rich , I would buy a villa .
2- This dress is expensive , so I can't buy it . **(If)**
If this dress were cheap , I would buy it .
3- He doesn't get up early, so he doesn't catch the first train . **(If)**
If he got up early , he would catch the first train .

- يمكن استخدام were بدلا من If

Ex :

1- He is very poor . So he can't buy a flat .
* If he were rich , he would buy a flat
= If he (wasn't – weren't) poor , he 'd buy a flat .
= Were he rich , he'd buy a flat
2- If he were to leave early , he'd arrive there on time .

- يمكن استخدام Had بدلاً من If

Ex :

I don't have enough time , so I can't attend the meeting .
= If I had enough time , I 'd attend the meeting .
= Had I enough time , I'd attend the meeting .

- امثلة اخرى هامة

Ex :

1- Without the Nile , Egypt would be a barren land . **(If)**
* If it weren't for the Nile , Egypt would be a barren land .
2- But for his help , I wouldn't pass the test . **(If)**
* If he didn't help me , I wouldn't pass the test

The third conditional tense
الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

.للتعبير عن تمني في الماضى أو حدث مستحيل تحقيقه تماماً*

If ⟶ ماضى تام ⟶ would have + P.P **الـ 3**

Ex :

1- If he had got up early , he would have caught the first train.
2- He didn't study . So , he didn't succeed . **(If)**
If he had studied , he would have succeeded .
3- She didn't buy the dress because she didn't have enough money . **(If)**
* If she had had enough money , she would have bought the dress .



Should

Should ⟶ subject ⟶ inf
= If ⟶ subject ⟶ (present or past)

1- If he comes early , he will meet Reda . **(Should)**
= Should he come early , he will meet Reda .

2- If he came early , he would meet Reda . **(Should)**
= Should he come early he would meet Reda .

- يمكن أن تحل Had محل If

Ex :

1- If he had been rich , he'd have helped us .
= Had he been rich , he'd have helped us .
2- Had he had money , he'd have lent you . **(If)**
* If he had had money , he'd have lent you .

إذا لم Unless = If not نفس حالات If

Ex :

Unless he had been poor , she'd have married him . (**Hadn't**)

* Hadn't he been poor , she'd have married him .

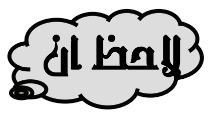
أمثلة أخرى هامة :

Ex :

1- Without your help , I wouldn't have got a job . **(If)**

* If it hadn't been for your help , I wouldn't have got a job . (**but for**)

2- But for your help , I wouldn't have got a job .



أ- ياتى بعد without **بدون** **أو** But for **لولا " اسم "**

ب- ياتى بعد If **جملة " فاعل ثم فعل " في ازمنة تختلف حسب التعبير المراد .**



A- Choose the correct answer :

1- If he had been more careful, he (**would make – wouldn't make – would have made –wouldn't have made**) all these mistakes .

2- If he hadn't bought a car , he (**wouldn't have had – wouldn't have – hadn't had – didn't have**) that accident .

3- (**Unless – If – Because – So**) you work much harder, you won't pass the exam .

4- If it rains tomorrow, I (**go – will go – have gone – would go**) to the library .

5- If I were rich , I (**can buy – had bought – would buy – will buy**) a big house .

6- I would have bought this car unless I (**had been – have been – were – am**) in trouble .

7- Unless you pay the money , you (**will get – would get – wouldn't – won't get**) the ticket .

8- Had he a flat , he **(will marry – would have married – would marry – will have married**).

9- (**Unless – Hadn't – If – Were**) I phoned him , he wouldn't have come in ??1
time .
10- Had I had a good memory , I (**would have – will have – may have – shall have**) remembered his name .

B- Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Due to his carelessness, he lost his money . **(If)**
* ………………………………………………………… .
2- Without his help , I wouldn't have passed the test . (**Unless)**
* ………………………………………………………… .
3- He won't join the army since he is short . **(If**)
* ………………………………………………………… .
4- He didn't help her , so she didn't finish in time . (**If**)
* ………………………………………………………… .
5- I can't buy this car because I'm not rich . **(If)**
* ………………………………………………………… .
6- She can't get high marks unless she studies well . **(If)**
* ………………………………………………………… .
7- He was out , so he didn't see the robbery . (**Unless**)
* ………………………………………………………… .
8- Take an aspirin and your headache may get better . **(If**)
* ………………………………………………………… .
9- They are allowed into the club only if they are members . (**Unless**)
* ………………………………………………………… .
10- Hurry up or you will miss the train . **(If**)
* ………………………………………………………… .

Rem

Should ⟶ subject + inf .

1- If he stops eating too much , he will lose weight . (**Should** ..)
* ………………………………………………………… .

2- I don't know the truth , so I can't tell you **(If ..)**
* ………………………………………………………… .
3- He doesn't have enough free time , so he can't go to the club **(If ..)**

* ....

4- He is too short to play basketball **.** **(If ..)**

* ....

5- She can't go out alone because she isn't well enough . **(If ..)**

* ....

6- Hazem doesn't make more money because he works lazily **. (If ..)**

* ....

Rem

Were subject + → to + inf / adj

1- If he earned more money , he would live better . **(Were …)**

* Were he to earn money , he would live better .

2- If she took medicine on time , she would get better . **(Were …)**

* ....

3- If you needed help, I would gladly give it . **(Were …)**

* ....

4- If he were rich , he would buy a car.

* Were he rich , he would buy a car .

5- If they were ready, they would win the race.

* ....

6- A lot of people were killed because the war broke out . **(If)**

* ....

7- I am sorry , I didn't visit you because I didn't know you were ill . **(If)**

* ....

8- The weather wasn't fine yesterday , so we didn't go to the club . (**If)**

* ....

9 - Hossam didn't have enough practice that's why he lost his tennis match. **(If)**

* ....

10 - Because of his intelligence, he got the job . **(If)**

* ....

Rem

Had " hadn't " ⟶ subject + P.P

1- I didn't know his address, so I didn't send him an invitation . (**Had** …)

* ………………………………………………………… .

2- They fought bravely, so they won the battle . (**Hadn't** …)

* ………………………………………………………… .

Rem

If → **subject + verb**

= In case of
in the event of } V.+ ing اسم أو

1- If she behaves badly, she will be punished . (**In case of** …)

* ………………………………………………………… .

2- If you work hard, you'll get high marks . (**In case of …**)

* ………………………………………………………… .

Rem

unless **= If … not**	**Subject + verb**

= Without
But for } V.+ ing اسم أو

If it { **Weren't for** / **Hadn't been for**

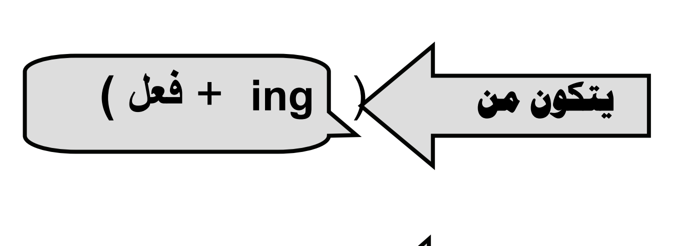
1- Unless he was clever, he wouldn't get the job . (**without / If it …**)

* ………………………………………………………… .

2- But for his apology, he would have got into trouble . (**Unless ..**)

* ………………………………………………………… .





استخداماته :

1- فاعل للجملة :

Ex :

Reading is my favourite hobby.

2- بعد الصفة المتبوعة بحرف الجر:

Ex :

I'm fond of reading .

3- بعد بعض حروف الجر أو العبارات :

Ex :

1- I'm looking forward to seeing you .
2- They are used to getting up early .
3- He …………………………….. .
4- I …………………………….. .
5- We …………………………….. .
6- She …………………………….. .
7- I'm looking forward to seeing you .
8- He …………………………….. .
9- She …………………………….. .
10- They …………………………….. .
11- We …………………………….. .
12- Zidan …………………………….. .
13- We use pens for (write – writing) .
14- He left without (leave – leaving) a message .

Without بدون - for لاجل - Because of بسبب - During – After – Before – while – when

Ex :

1- After arriving , they had lunch .
2- I can't go without (phone – phoning) them .
3- He didn't meet Rami because of (arrive – arriving) late .
4- He used to (travel – traveling) .

4- بعد بعض الافعال الاتية : (إذا اتى بعدها فعل [يكون مضافاً اليه ing])

Love **يحب** - like **يحب** - hate **يكره** – prefer **يفضل** - begin**يبدأ** – start **يبدأ** - continue **يستمر** - see **يرى** - hear **يسمع** - need **يحتاج** - remember **يتذكر** – stop .

Ex :

1- I like swimming .
2- I enjoy (read – reading) .
3- I saw him (cross – crossing) the street .
4- We hate (smoke – smoking) .
5- They will go (shop – shopping) .
6- I don't need (call – calling) them .
7- I like to (swim – swimming).

Busy **مشغول** - worth **يستحق**

- **He is busy (work – working).**
- **This book is worth (read – reading).**

6- بعد العبارات الاتية :

(don't mind لا نمانع - can't help لا يقاوم - no use لا فائدة - no good لا نفع can't stand لا يستطيع تحمل - fancy تخيل)

Ex :

1- I don't mind (**lend – lending**) you my camera .
2- I can't help (**feel – feeling**) sorry for him .
3-It's no use (**crying – cry**) like a baby .

Choose the correct answer :

1- I don't like (**walk – walks – walking – walked**) alone .
2- I enjoyed (**stay – staying – stays – stayed**) there .
3- I'm used to (**ride – rode – rides – riding**) a horse in my uncle's farm .
4- I saw him (**ride – rode – rides – riding**) a bike yesterday .
5- He prefers (**reading – read – reads**) in the morning .
6- Stop (**make – makes – making – made**) such a noise .

7- He used to (**ride – rode – rides – riding**) a bike when he was young .
8- It's no good (**get – getting – got – gets**) angry at once .
9- I like to (**walking – walks – walk – walked**) with my friends .
10- I can't stand people (**shout** – **shouting** – **shouts** – **shouted**) .
11- I don't mind (**help – helped - helps – helping**) him .
12- Let's go (**swimming – swim – swims – swam**) .
13- Have they started (**build – building – built – builds**) the house ?
14- He is interested in (**fish – fished – fishing – fishes**) .
15- Do you want to (**call – calling – called – calls**) him ?
16- Do you want (**call – calling – called – calls**) him ?
17- After (**finish – finished – finishing**) our work, we went out .

****

Prepositions حروف الجر

in في

قبل شهور السنة : * in January في يناير - in July في يوليو
قبل تاريخ سنة: * in 1973 – in 1995
قبل فصول السنة: * in the summer في الصيف - in the winter في الشتاء
قبل بعض فترات اليوم : *in the morning في الصباح – in the afternoon بعد الظهر - in the evening في المساء

ولكن * **at** dawn **فجراً** – **at** night **ليلاً** - **at** noon **ظهراً** *

قبل البلاد والمدن * in Egypt في مصر - in Cairo في القاهرة - in England فى انجلترا
مع الملابس * She is a student **in** a school uniform .



بـ " with " مع اعضاء الجسم

* I can see a fat man **with** a moustache .استطيع أن ارى رجل سمين بشارب
بمعنى فى خلال The train will arrive **in** half an hour .
سيصل القطار في خلال نصف ساعة.

********** بمعنى في الوقت المناسب **In time** **********

* We will arrive **in time** .

ولكن **on time** في الوقت المحدد

* The plane will arrive **on time** . ستصل الطائرة في الوقت المحدد

On على

قبل ايام الاسبوع **On** * We don't go to school on Fridays .
قبل تاريخ يوم **On** * He was born **on the 7th of** July .
* في الوقت المحدد.. On time بمعنى في الوقت المحدد مع كلمة Time

At

قبل الساعة He gets up at 7 a.m. **7 هو يستيقظ الساعة**
قبل مكان صغير He works at school . **هو يعمل بمدرسة**
(قبل (.. الظهر.. الفجر .. الليل **at noon ظهراً - at dawn فجراً – at night ليلاً** .



He works at school .
= He works in a school .



1- Days of the week : ايام الاسبوع
On .. Saturday **السبت** - Sunday **الاحد** Monday **الاثنين** – Tuesday **الثلاثاء**
On .. Wednesday **الاربعاء** - Thursday **الخميس**- Friday **الجمعة**



2- Months of the year شهور السنة
January **يناير** - February **فبراير** - March **مارس** – April **ابريل** - May **مايو** -
June **يوليو** - August **اغسطس** – September **سبتمبر** - October **اكتوبر** -
November **نوفمبر** December **ديسمبر**
3- Seasons of the year فصول السنة
1- Autumn **11 ، 10 ، 9 الخريف .. شهوره**
2- Winter **2 ، 1 ، 12 الشتاء.. شهوره**
3- Spring **5 ، 4 ، 3 الربيع.. شهوره**
4-Summer **8، 7 ، 6 الصيف .. شهوره**

Look

Look at **الى (انظر – ينظر)**
Look for **يبحث عن**
Look after **يعتنى بـ**

Look up (a word) يبحث عن معنى كلمة في قاموس

Break يكسر

Break down يتعطل
Break into يقتحم
Break out تندلع
(good at جيد في – bad at سيى في)- (succeed in ينجح في - manage toينجح في - compete in يتنافس في
- interested in مهتم بـ) (afraid of خائف من - full of مملوء بـ - consist of يتكون من - fond of مغرم بـ - frightened of خائف من) – (point to يشير الى – used to اعتاد أن - grateful to ممنون بـ) – (pick up يلتقط – clear upيرتب – get up يستيقظ)- (famous for مشهور بـ - late for متاخر على - search for يبحث عن – apologize for يعتذر على - thank for يشكر على
- wait for ينتظر) – (angry with غاضب من - crowded with مزدحم بـ - communicate with يتصل بـ – connect to يربط بـ - provide with يمد بـ)- (go on يستمر – congratulate on يهنىء على
rely on يعتمد على - switch on يضىء - turn on يدير)- (turn off يفصل - switch off يطفىء - fall off يقع من على – take off يخلع – set off (يذهب في رحلة - run out ينفذ - come across يصادف (work out يحسب = calculate) – (go to = leave for)

Choose :

1- We sleep … night .
A) on b) at c) in
2- I study my lessons … the afternoon .
a) at b) in c) on
3- He works …. his shop .
a) at b) in c) on
4- I saw a man ….. a long beard . لحية طويلة
a) in b) at c) on d) with
5- She is a nurse ……… a white uniform .
a) in b) at c) on d) with
6- He was born …. 1990 .
a) at b) in c) on d) with
7- He was born …… the 2nd of December .
a) at b) in c) on d) with
8- They live …….London now .
a) at b) on c) in d) with
9- He gets up late …….. the morning .

a) at **b) on** **c) in** **d) with**

10- I go to school ……. noon .

a) at **b) on** **c) in** **d) with**

11- I will go to Marsa Matrooh (**on – in – at – with**) summer .
12- He was born (**at – in – on – with**) December .
13- The bus to Tanta will arrive (**at – in – on**) time .
14- They are late , but they arrived (**at – in – on**) time .
15- The bus to Aswan will arrive (**at – in – on**) an hour .
16- They will arrive (**on – at – in – with**) six o'clock .
17- He was born (**on – at – in – with**)the 1st of October .
18- We don't go to school (**on – at – in – with**) holidays .
19- There are a lot (**on – of – at – in**) people .
20- Give me a piece (**on – of – at – in**) cake , please .
21- He is good (**on – of – at – in**) English .
22- Don't be afraid (**on – of – at – in**) dogs .
23- They are interested (**on – of – at – in**) sport .
24- I will take (**on – of – at – off**) my coat .
25- He apologized (**on – for – of – in**) coming late .
26- He succeeded (**on – for – of – in**) his exams .
27- His flat consists (**on – for – of – in**) 3 rooms .
28- Are you still angry (**with – on – of – in**) him ?
29- He fell (**with – on – off – of**) his bike .
30- Giza is famous (**with – for – on – of**) the Pyramids .
31- Switch (**on – of – off – in**) the light , I'm going to sleep .
32- He is fond (**in – at – of – with**) reading .
33- They provided us (**in – at – of – with**) food .
34- Look ! someone is pointing (**in – of – to – with**) us .
35- The street was crowded (**in – of – to with**) people .
36- I thanked him (**in – of – for – to**) helping us .
37- Are you bad (**in – with – of – at**) Mathematics .
38- Who looks (**at – after – for – up**) sick people ?
39- I looked (**at – after – for – up**) my watch , but I didn't find it .
40- You can look (**at – after – for – up**) this word in the dictionary .
41- We look **(at – after – for – up)** the blackboard when the teacher writes on it .
42- Hurry up ! we are late (**at – after – for – up**) the match .
43- We were late because the bus broke (**into of – down – out**) .
44- Yesterday , some thieves broke (**into – of – down – out**) the next flat.
45- The fire broke (**into – of – down – out**) in my neighbours flat .

46- Don't stop working .Go (**to – on – at – for**) .
47- He can't carry this bucket . It's full **(at – off – on – of**) water .
48- Mothers look (**at – after – for – up**) their children .

Revision(5)

A- Choose the correct answer :

1- Rami and I (**am – is – are – was**) good at English .
2- They (**are – am - were – was**) working yesterday .
3- It (**am – is – are – was**) raining yesterday .
4- Sameh and Adel (**am – is – are – was**) playing now .
5- They (**have – has – are – do**) lunch at 4 p.m .
6- He (**have – has - is – does**) lunch at 2 p.m .
7- I (**does – is – am - do**) my homework everyday .
8- They (**does – did – are – were**) their work .
9- It (**don't – isn't – doesn't – wasn't**) rain in summer .
10- Rewan (**does – is – was – do**) her homework everyday .
11- (**This – These – Those**) is my book .
12- (**This – these That**) are my friends .
13- We go to (**am – the - a**) cinema to see (**am – the – a**) film .
14- Ramzi is (**an – the – a**) good friend .
15- Can you find (**an – the – a**) Red Sea on the map ?
16- They went to (**an – the – a**) theatre to see (**an – the – a**) play .
17- Did you visit (**an – the – a**) Sphinx ?
18- I met (**an – the – a**) old man yesterday .
19- Give me (**an – the – a**) pen which you took yesterday .
20- Rewan (**have – has got – have got**) 2 brothers .
21- They (**has – has got – have got**) a car .
22- They (**have got – has – had – has got**) 2 cars 5 years ago .
23- Rami isn't at home . (**She – It – He – They**) is at school .
24- Rehab isn't sleeping . (**She – It – He – They**) is doing her homework .
25- My pens aren't in my bag . **(I – We – It – They**) are on the desk .
26- Noha cooked the food (**himself – myself – herself – yourself**) .
27- They built the house (**himself – themselves – ourselves – yourselves**).
28- I did my homework (**myself – itself – himself – herself**) .
29- I gave (**he – I – mine – him**) my pen .
30- He gave (**they – them – theirs – their**) some books .
31- Take (**you – yours – your**) books .
32- Help (**himself – myself – yourself)**
33- This book is (**I – me – mine – my**) .

34- That pen is (**her – she – he – hers**) .
35- These books are (**yours – your – you**).
36- This car is (**them – they – theirs – their**) .
37- This book is (**his – him – he – she**) .
38- Those books are (**us – we – our – ours**) .
39- Do you know the man (**which – who – whose – where**) came yesterday ?
40- Show me the watch (**who – whose – that – where**) you bought last week .
41- Did you tell him about the new car (**who – which – where – whose**) your uncle bought yesterday ?
42- August is **(hot – hotter – hottest**) than May .
43- Cotton is the (**more – little – most – less**) expensive crop .
44- Who is the (**old – oldest – older**) one in your family ?
45- Sami is ten years old and Rami is fourteen years old . Who is the (**old – oldest – older**)?
46- Lesson seven is (**more – little – most – few**) difficult than lesson three .
47- This is the man (**who – which – whose – what**) brother got the first prize .
48- Do you know (**what – where – when – which**) he lives ?
49- Holidays are the time (**what – where – when – which**) we can visit our relatives .
50- Don't be afraid . Trust (**himself – myself – yourself**).
51- (**Lot of – Lots of – Much – A lot**) people like watching football matches .
52- He knows **(many – lots – a lot of – a few**) information .
53- How (**many – much – little – few**) money do you want ?
54- How **(many – much – little – few**) pieces of chalk do you want ?
55- I don't need (**an – some – any**) help .
56- I need **(an – some – any**) water .
57- There isn't **(many – a few – much – a**) water .
58- Did you ask for (**an – some – any**) help ?
59- Would you like to have **(an – some – any**) orange juice ?
60- There is **(many – much – little – few**) oil . We need to buy some .
61- He is **(reads – read – reading**) now .
62- Look ! The train **(comes – is coming – came – come)** at this moment .
64- Rewan usually **(work – works – working**) by day .

65- They usually (**work – works – working**) by day .
66- He sometimes **(study – studying – studies – studied**) in the evening.
67- I (**visit – visits – visited – visiting**) my uncle last week .
68- Where (**do – did – does – done**) you stay last week ?
69- There (**are – is – was – were**) a lot of people yesterday .
70- He **(finish – finished – finishes – finishing**) his work 2 weeks ago .
71- They **(visit – will visit – visited – visiting**) us tomorrow .
72- We **(visit – visited – shall visit – visiting**) our uncle tomorrow .
73- I **(going – am going – go goes**) to visit Giza next month .
74- They (**are going – going – are visiting – go**) Tanta next week .
75- He (**is going – going – is going to – goes**) out after 2 hours .
76- There **(were – are – will – will be**) more schools in the future .
77- Rami **(didn't come – hasn't come – haven't come – doesn't come**) yet .
78- They (**have – has – are – were**) just left .
79- We (**has bought – bout – have bought – will buy**)a new car recently.
80- They haven't arrived (**ago – yet – for – since**) .
81- He has studied English (**ago – yet – for – since**) six years .
82- He has studied English (**ago – yet – for – since**) 2000 .
83- He studied English six years (**ago – yet – for – since**) .
84- When it rained , they (**played – playing – were playing – was playing) .**
85- While I was reading , the door bell (**rang – ringing – rings – were ringing**)
86- After I (**played – plays – had played – playing**) , I went back home .
87- Before I **(played – plays – had played – playing)** , I had phoned my uncle .
88- By 12 p.m. , they (**watched – watches – had watched – watching**) seven films .
89- I can't help **(feel – feeling - fell – feels**) sorry for them .
90- He is interested in **(help – helping – helped**) the poor .
91- If you call Rami now , you (**may – might – might have**) know the answer .
92- If he called Rami , he **(may know – might know – might have known**) the answer .
93- If he had called Rami , he (**may know – might know – might have known**) the answer .
94- During my (**read – reading – reads**) , the phone rang .

95- Unless he studied , he (**would fail – will fail – would have failed – would have succeeded**).
96- I enjoyed (**visit – visited – visiting – visits**) my uncle's farm .
97- Unless they came on time , they (**can't meet – couldn't have met – couldn't meet**) Mr. Ali .
98- If he (**gets – get – got – had got**) up early , he could catch the train .
99- If they (**meet – met – meets – had met**) Rami they could have known the address .
100- While (**was reading – reading – were reading**) , the phone rang .

B- Correct the word(s) between brackets :

1- He sometimes (fish) in summer .
*…………………………………….. .
2- They (begin) their work 2 hours ago .
*…………………………………….. .
3- Rewan (cook) lunch now .
*…………………………………….. .
4- We (meet) them tomorrow .
*…………………………………….. .
5- I usually (fish) in summer .
*…………………………………….. .
6- I (sell) my old bike yesterday .
*…………………………………….. .
7- Listen ! someone (knock) on the door .
*…………………………………….. .
8- They (travel) to Syria next winter .
*…………………………………….. .
9- While he (play) , he fell on his arm .
*…………………………………….. .
10- When he (come), we were watching TV.
*…………………………………….. .
11- As soon as he (come) , Rami called him .
*…………………………………….. .
12- As we (have) lunch , my uncle phoned us .
*…………………………………….. .
13- You should (study) hard .
*…………………………………….. .
14- If they (come), they would meet Reda .

*……………………………………….. .
15- Unless they had come , they (meet) Reda .
*……………………………………….. .

C- Use the word(s) between brackets and make any necessary changes to make the sentence correct :

1- He speaks English well . **(not)**
*……………………………………….. .
2- This is my favourite dish . **(are)**
*……………………………………….. .
3- He was reading a story . **(They)**
*……………………………………….. .
4- They study hard everyday . **(He)**
*……………………………………….. .
5- She cooks rice everyday **. (They)**
*……………………………………….. .
6- He did his homework himself .
* I …………………………….. .
* We …………………………….. .
* They …………………………….. .
* She …………………………….. .
* You …………………………….. .
7- I get up early everyday . **(Rami)**
*………………………………………..
8- I get up early everyday . **(yesterday)**
*……………………………………….. **(tomorrow)**
*………………………………………..
9- He met them yesterday **. (not)**
*………………………………………..
10- I like music **. (not)**
*………………………………………..
12- He got up early . then , he had his breakfast **. (After)**
*………………………………………..
13- He got up early . Then , he had his breakfast **. (Before)**
*………………………………………..
14- They saw him (run) . **(Correct)**
*………………………………………..
15- He doesn't travel abroad . **(yet)**

*……………………………………..

16- He worked here 10 years ago **(since)**

*……………………………………..

17- While they were having lunch , their uncle phoned them . **(During)**

*……………………………………..

18- After he had finished his study , he went abroad **. (finishing)**

*……………………………………..

19- He is busy **(work)** . (Correct)

*……………………………………..

20- I have got some books . **(not)**

*……………………………………..

21- I had a cheese sandwich and an apple 2 hours ago . **(We)**

*……………………………………..

D: Complete :

1

A: Where are you going now ?
B: …………… (1) …………….to Giza .
A: …………… (2) ……………………?
B: I'm going with my uncle .
A: Are you going to stay in a hotel .
B: ………….. (3) ………………….. . we are going to stay in my grand_ father's house .
A: ………….. (4) …………………. ?
B: Yes, I'm going to visit the pyramids .
A: How long are you going to stay ?
B: ………….. (5)……………..for 2 weeks .

2

A: Where were you yesterday ?
B: …………. (1) ……… in Giza .
A: ………… (2) ……………… ?
B: Yes, I was with my brother .
A: Were you happy there .
B: ………….(3) ………. and I enjoyed very much .
A: …………. (4) ……………………… ?
B: I was visiting the Pyramids .

3

A: What do you learn at school ?
B: ………….. (1) ……………… a few subjects .
A: ………….. (2)………………….. ?
B: Mr. Farid teaches us English .
A: Do you speak English well ?
B: …………… (3) ……………. and I write well too .
A: ……………(4) ……………………… ?
B: Yes, the Arabic teacher teaches us well .
A: How often do you learn English ?
B: ……………(5) …………………… a week .
A: ……………………..(6) …………… ?
B: I draw very well .
A: Does your friend , Rami go to school with you ?
B: ……………(7) …………. and come back alone too .
A: …………… (8)…………………….. ?
B: He goes back home by taxi

4

A: Where did you go yesterday ?
B: …………..(1) …………… to Giza .
A: ………… (2) ………… ?
B: I went with my father .
A: How did you go there ?
B: …………. (3) ………….. .
A: ………….(4)…………… ?
B: I visited the Pyramids .
A: Did you enjoy ?
B: …………. (5) ……….very much .
A: ……………..(6) ………………… ?
B: I stayed in a hotel .

5

A: Where will you go next month ?
B: …………….(1) ……………. to Giza .
A: …………… (2)…………………..?
B: I will go with my family .

A: How will you go there ?
B: ………… (3) …………….. .
A: ………….. (4) …………… ?
B: We will visit many places .
A: Where will you stay ?
B: ………….. (5) ………………….. .
A: ………….. (6) ……………….. ?
B: We will stay for two weeks .

6

A: Where have you been ?
B: ………….. (1) ……… to Giza .
A: …………..(2) ……………….. ?
B: Yes I have enjoyed my stay .
A: Did you visit the Giza Zoo ?
B: …………. (3) ……and the Cairo Tower .
A: How did you come back ?
B: ………… (4) ………….

7

A: …………. (1) ……………?
B: Yes , I want 2 kilos of apples .
A: How much does a kilo cost ?
B: ………… (2) …………… .
A: ………… (3) ……………?
B: Yes , I want a kilo of potatoes .
A: ………… (4)…………….?
B: A kilo of potatoes costs 3 pounds.
A: Here is the money .
B: …………… (5) ………….. .
A: ………….. (6) …………… .

****

الروابط

الجمل الدالة على التضاد

But ولكن - Although بالرغم من = Though = Even though – However , ومع ذلك

Ex :

1- He is rich , but he is unhappy .
2- Although he is rich , he is unhappy .
3- He is rich . However , he is unhappy .
4- He is unhappy though he ……………………………….. .
5- He is unhappy although ………………………………….
6- He is poor , (though – but – however) he is happy .
7- He is poor . (Though – But – However – Although), he is happy .
8- He is happy (but – although – however) he is poor.
9- ………………… he is bad, he got high marks .
10- He is bad , ……… he got high marks.
11- He is bad . ……….. , he got high marks.
12- He plays basketball …………. he is short .
13- …………………….. , but ……………………………
14- ………………………. . However , …………………. .
15- Although he is fat , he plays football .
16- ……………. ……….. However , ……………………. .
17- …………………………. , but …………..…………
18- He was hungry . However , he didn't eat .
19- ……………………………. , but ………….. …………
20- Though ……………………. ………………………
21-…………………………….although ……………………

الجمل الدالة على السبب

because لأن - therefore = thus لذلك - so ولذلك ولهذا

Ex:

1- He got high marks because he studied hard .
2- He studied hard , so he got high marks .
3- He studied hard , therefore he got high marks .

***لاحظ أن السبب (الجملة) :**

بعد Because وقبل so أو therefore

4- He got bad marks (because – so) he played too much .
5- He played too much , (because – so) he got bad marks .
6- He played too much , (because – therefore) he got bad marks .
7- He came late ……………………………… he got up late .
8- He got up late , ……………………………………………..
9- He succeeded ……………………………….. studied well .
10- He studied well , ……………………………………….
11- They came on time ……….……………….. got up early .
12- They got up early , ……………………………………….
13- They help the poor ……………………………..good .
14- They ……………….good …………..……………… .
15- They won the match ……………………………… well .
16- They ……………………… well ………..…………. …..
17- We were happy …………..………… passed the exam .
18- …………….. passed the exam …………………………. .
19- He didn't come……………….…. ……….………was ill .

الجمل الدالة على الغرض:

To لكى = in order to = so as to

Ex:

1- He studies to pass the exam .
2- ……………………… in order to ….…………………………. .
3- ……………….……… so as to ………………………………. .



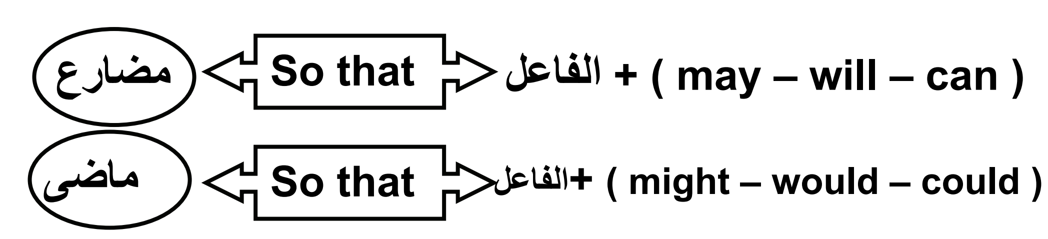
أنه ياتى بعد كل من :

(to = in order to = so as to)
ياتى المصدر بدون to

4- He got up early to (catch – caught) the train .
5- They played well in order to (win – won) the much .
6- He went to Giza to (visited – visit) the Pyramids .
7- He goes abroad …………………………...**goods**. **بضائع** .
8- He studies English hard ……………………..……. a good job .
9- She bought some vegetables ………………………..……. lunch .
10- He took a taxi ……………….. ……………………on time .
11- He works hard ………………………………………….. rich .
12- He ran fast ……………………………………………. the race .
13- He ran to the station …………………………….. the train .
14- We go to school ……………………..…………….. subjects .
15- He ran fast so as not to miss the train .
16- He studies hard …………... not ……………………… fail .
17- He took a taxi ………..…. not ………………………… late .
18- He works hard …………..not …………..…the bus to port said .
19- They got up early ………. not ……..…… the bus to port Said .
20- He asked the policeman about the way ……….… not …………….. the way .

*** تابـع الجمل الدالة على الغرض:**

لكى (so that – in order that)



Ex :
1- He works hard **so that** he can get much money .
2- He worked **in order that** he could get much money .
3- He studies hard in order that he (may – might) get high marks .
4- He studied hard so that he (may – might) get high marks .
5- They worked hard in order that they (will – would) finish their work on time .

6- They work hard so that they (will – would) finish their work on time .
7- He played well so that ………………………………………… the first place .
8- He plays well in order that ……………………………………….. the first place .
9- They play well ………………………………………………………………the match .
10- They played well …………………………………………………………. the match .

****



A- Choose the correct answer :

1- He was late, (**although – but – because – however**) he caught the train .
2- (**Although – but – Because**) he was late, he caught the train .
3- He was late . (**But – However – Although**) , he caught the train .
4- He came to the party (**so that – to – because**) meet his old friends .
5- He learns five languages (**so that – to – because**) he can get a better job.
6- He travelled abroad in order that he (**can – will – could**) find a better job .
7- He travelled abroad , (**so – because – to**) he found a good job .
8- He called me (**so that – in order to – because**) tell me about the next meeting .
9- They didn't come (**because – to – so that**) they missed the train .
10- He called them so that he (**can – could**) tell them about the next meeting .

B: Use the word(s) in brackets to make one correct sentence :

1- He was ill . He didn't go to the doctor
* ……………………………………………… **(but)**
* ……………………………………………… . **(although)**
* ……………………………………………… . **(However)**

2- He sold his car to get more money .
* ……………………………………………… . **(so that)**

3- They get up early so that they can arrive on time .
* ……………………………………………… . **(in order to)**

4- She went to the doctor . She was ill .
* ……………………………………………… . **(so)**

* ………………………………………… . (because)
* ………………………………………… . (therefore)

5- She cooked a lot of food . She invited a lot of friends .
* ………………………………………… . (therefore)
* ………………………………………… . (because)
* ………………………………………… . (so)

6- They built some houses to live in them .
* ………………………………………… . (in order that)

7- They helped him . He didn't thank them .
* ………………………………………… . (although)
* ………………………………………… . (but)
* ………………………………………… . (However)

Conjunctions تابع:الروابط

دالة على السبب

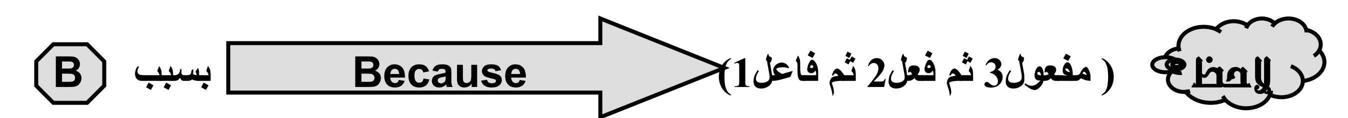


because لان = as = for = since

Ex :

1- He was clever . He got the highest mark . **(because)**
* He got the highest mark **because** he was clever .
= He got the highest mark **as** he was clever .
= He got the highest mark **since** he was clever .
= He got the highest mark **for** he was clever .

2- He was ill . He went to the doctor . **(As)**
* He went to the doctor **as** he was ill .



because of = owing to = due to = on account of = as a result of = for - thanks to بفضل

* (Being + الصفة) ⟶ Being ill , he stayed in bed .

Because of ⟶ (noun اسم) أو(v . ing)

Ex :

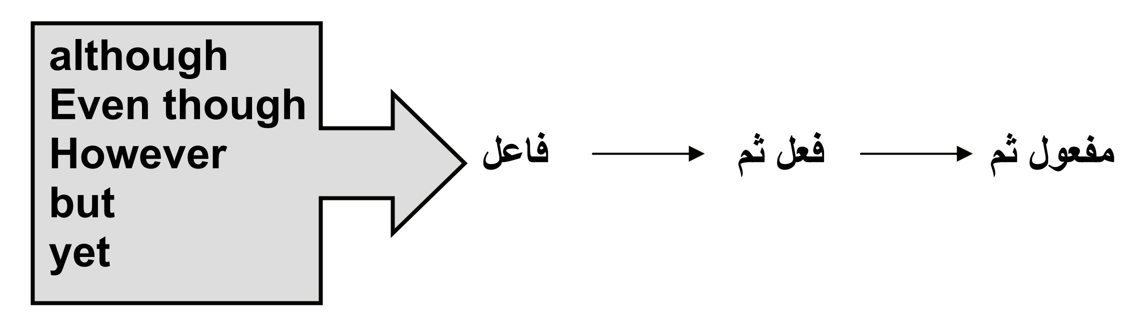
1- He succeeded **because** he was clever . (**due to**)
* He succeeded **due to** his cleverness .
= He succeeded **due to** being clever .

= He succeeded **because of** his cleverness.
= He succeeded **owing to** his cleverness .
= **Being** clever , he succeeded .
2- He succeeded **thanks to** his parents' efforts .
3- He succeeded thanks to his parents' help . (**because**)
* He succeeded because his parents helped him .

دالة على التناقض

A بالرغم من

(although = though = even though حتى لو = even if)
ومع ذلك however - whatever مهما - as - but ولكن
- yet – (whether .... or not) (سواء .... ام لا)



Ex :
1- **Although** he is young , he is wise .
2- I will buy this shirt **even though** it is expensive .

(صفة → as → فاعل → فعل)
(However مهما → صفة → فاعل → فعل)
(Whatever مهما → اسم → فاعل → فعل)

Ex :
1- He was innocent . He was punished . (use : as)
* Innocent **as** he was , he was punished .
2-He was innocent **, however** he was punished .
3- However **innocent** he was , he was punished .
4- Whatever **his innocence** , he was punished .

B بالرغم من In spite of = Despite = for all = not withstanding
regardless of بصرف النظر عن

In spite of → **(noun اسم) أو(v. + ing)**

Ex :

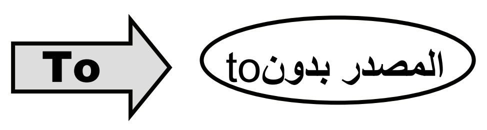
* He was innocent . He was punished . (despite)
*Despite being innocent , he was punished .

دالة على الغرض



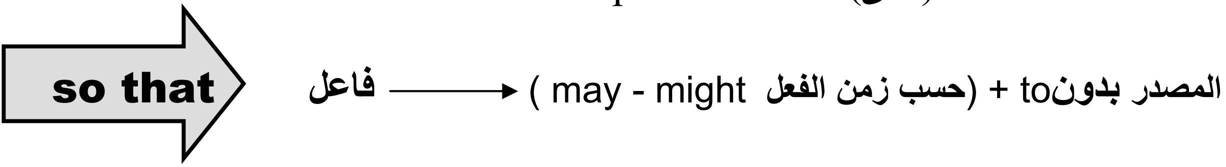
(to) = in order to لكى = so as to

- in order not to = so as not to . كى لا



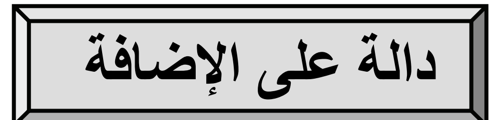
B

so that = in order that = in the hope that = that (لكى)



Ex :

1- He works day and night . He wants to make money **(in order that)**
* **He works day and night in order that he may make money.(in order to)**
2- He works day and night **in order to** make money .
3- He saved up for years . He aimed at buying a car **. (so that)**
* He **saved** up for years **so that** he **might buy** a car . **(to)**
* He saved up for years to buy a car .



* Not only .... but also ليس فقط .... ولكن أيضا
= Not only .... but ...... as well



Ex :

1- We went to the market and the zoo . **(Besides**) بجانب
* Besides going to the market , we went to the zoo .

= **In addition to** going to the market , we went to the zoo . بالإضافة إلى
= **As well as** going to the market , we went to the zoo . بالإضافة إلى
* We not only went to the market , but also we went to the zoo .

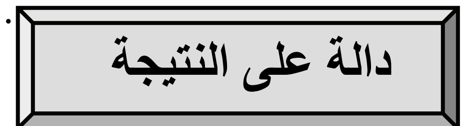
لاحظ

إذا طلب أن تبدا الجملة بـ Not only فلا بد أن نضع صيغة السؤال بعدها .

Ex :
1- Not only did we go to the market , but also we went to the zoo .
2- He passed the exams .He got top marks . (use : besides - not only)
* Besides passing his exams , he got top marks.
* He not only passed his exams, but also got top marks .

(as well as) * إذا ربطت بين فاعلين فيتبع فعل الجملة الفاعل الاول.

Ex :
1- I as well as my brother **(am - is - are**) happy .
2- They as well as Heba **(am - is - are**) happy .
3- Hani as well as his friends (**am - is - are**) happy .



لذلك – ولهذا

* **So = therefore = Thus = hence = consequently** ولهذا
* **That is the reason why** ولهذا يكون السبب

Ex :
1- I felt tired . I went to bed .
* I felt tired **, so** I went to bed .
* I felt tired **, therefore** I went to bed .
* I felt tired **, consequently** I went to bed .
2- He succeeded **because** he studied hard . (so)
* He studied hard **, so** he succeeded .



A - Choose the correct answer :

1- (**Despite - Owing to - Although - Because**) his bravery , he could storm the enemy's camp .
2- Yesterday , (**not only - beside - in addition to - as well**) studying , I watched a football match on TV .
3- They risked their lives (**so that - because - so as to - because**) save their country .
4-We like him (**owing to - as - due to - because of**) he is kind .
5- (**However - Although - Despite - As**) my help , he fell into debt .
6- It was hot , (**consequently - because - since - due to**) we went swimming .
7- He won't do any work for you **(so - because – however - owing to**) he is so lazy .

*** Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :**

1- Although he was seriously ill , he went on working . (**despite**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
2- Although he receives high salary , he is not content . (**Despite**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
3- Despite his hard work, he is unlucky . (**Although**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
4- He was a beginner . He got the gold medal . (**Even though**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
5- Despite not being very tall , he's a great basketball player . (**but**)
* ……………………………………………………… .

6- We postponed our trip because the weather was bad . (**because of**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
7- He will get high marks as he is intelligent . (**due to**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
8- Owing to her politeness, she got married . (**because**)
* ……………………………………………………… .

9- He failed owing to his carelessness . (**as**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
10- The accident happened due to heavy rain . (**because**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
11- We moved the furniture round so that we might make more space .
* ……………………………………………………… . (**so as to**)
12- He had a big breakfast . He didn't want to be hungry later in the day .
* ……………………………………………………… . (**so as to**)
13- She graduated and got a job in a bank . (**not only** ….)
* ……………………………………………………… .

14- Both my father and my uncles are going to travel abroad . (**as well as**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
15- On holiday, he visited London and Paris . (**Besides**)
* ……………………………………………………… .
16- Besides winning the game , he got the gold medal . (**not only**…)
* ……………………………………………………… .
17- Although he spoke slowly , we couldn't understand him . (**in spite of**)
* ……………………………………………………… .

Conjunctions تابع الروابط

Provided (that) = if بشرط أن

Ex :
1- You can borrow my car provided that you drive it carefully .
= You can borrow my car if you drive it carefully .
تستطيع أن تستعير سيارتى شريطة أن تقودها بحرص .
2- Using a car, in Cairo is fine provided you can find somewhere to park .
= Using a car, in Cairo is fine if you can find somewhere to park .
أن استخدام سيارة في القاهرة جيد بشرط أن تجد مكان لتركها .

As long as = if مادام – طالما

Ex :
1- Eman will get a good job as long as she gets a good degree .

2- I respect you as long as you are honest and sincere .
3- As long as you tell me the truth, I'll forgive you .

Unless = if … not إذا لم

Ex :

1- He can't succeed unless he studies .
2- He can't succeed if he doesn't study .
3- I'll visit you tomorrow if I don't travel to Cairo .
4- I'll visit you tomorrow unless I travel to Cairo .



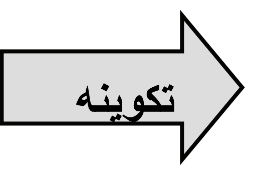
A– Choose the correct answer :

1- I read a newspaper everyday (**unless – so – in order to – provided that**) I have time .
2- Tourist won't come to visit Egypt (**unless – if – as long as – as long**) we look after the environment .
3- We'll carry out the new projects (**although – as long as – unless – even though**) we have the required funds .
4- It is good to visit beautiful places (**so that – in order that – provided that – unless**) you don't damage them .
5- The Red Sea resorts will be popular (**even if – provided that – unless – as long**) they remain unpolluted .

B- Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Unless we look after our sights and beaches, tourists won't come to our country . **(provided that)**
2- You have to leave now to catch the train . (**unless**)
3- She can't get high marks unless she studies well . (**if**)
4- I won't forgive her since she is ill brought up . (**as long as**)

**The passive المبنى للمجهول



التصريف الثالث للفعل + (v.to be حسب زمن الفعل)

تمهيد :

الزمن	التكوين	V. To be
مضارع بسيط	التصريف الاول	(am – is – are)
ماضى بسيط	التصريف الثانى	(was) – (were)
مضارع مستمر	(am – is – are) + v. + ing	(am – is – are) being
ماضى مستمر	(was – were) + v. + ing	(was – were) being
المستقبل البسيط	(shall , will) + v.	(shall , will) be
الافعال الناقصة	(can – could) (shall – should) + v. (may – might)	Can be Could be
مضارع تام	(has – have) p.p الـ 3	(has – have) been
ماضى تام	Had + p.p	Had been

Ex :

1- This shirt **is made** in Egypt .
2- The pyramids **were built** a long time ago .
3- These letters **have been sent** since 1993 .
4- The conference will (**hold – be held**) in Alex .
5- Rice is (**cooking – cook – being cooked**) now .
6- These carpets (**is made – were made – are making)** in Luxor .
7- A treasure (**are found – found – was found**) in the sea .
8- Tomatoes **(were filled – are filling – was filled**) with rice .
9- The meeting (**will hold – is holding – will be held**) in Aswan .
10- They (**punished – will punish – will be punished**) because they have made some mistakes .
11- The letters (**have sent – sent – have been sent – will send**) lately .
12- Children (**teach – are taught – taught**) different subjects .
13- The meeting (**can hold – hold – can be held**) in Aswan .
14- The sphinx (**built – was built – had built**) along time ago .
15- Crops (**grow – grew – are grown**) in different places .

خطوات تحويل الجملة من المعلوم الى المجهول

1 -نبدأ بالمفعول **object**
2-**Verb to be**. حسب زمن فعل جملة المعلوم.ثم التصريف الثالث لفعل جملة المعلوم
3-**by**
4- ضمير المفعول لفاعل جملة المعلوم

1- He speaks **English** well .
* **English** is spoken well **(by him)** .
2- She cooks rice well **(Rice)** .
* ……………………………. .
3- He mends cars well **(Cars)** .
* ……………………………. .
4- They grew **many crops**.
* **Many crops** were grown **(by them)**
5- He bought a car **(A car)** .
* ……………………………. .
6- She cooked some vegetables .
* Some vegetables …………………….. .
7- They are building **a hospital** .
* **A hospital** is being built **(by them)** .
8- She is cooking meatballs .
* Meatballs …………………….. .
9- He is writing a story .
* A story …………………………. .
10- She was reading **stories** .
* **Stories** were being read **(by her)** .
11- They were eating lunch .
* Lunch ………………………….. .
12- He was studying many subjects .
* Many subjects ………………….. .
13- He has scored **two goals** .
* **Two goals** have been scored **(by him)** .
14- They have built a nice villa .
* A nice villa ……………………..
15- She has cooked some vegetables .
* Some vegetables ………………….

16- He can score **many goals** .
* **Many goals** can be scored **(by him**).
17- They will buy a lorry .
* A lorry …………………… .
18- She could cooked some vegetables .
* Some vegetables …………………
19- He had caught **ten fish** by 9 p.m.
* Ten fish had been caught by 9 p.m.
20- They had built ten houses .
* Ten houses …………………. .
21- She had cooked some vegetables .
* Some vegetables ………………….. .



A- Choose the correct answer :

1- The Egyptian cotton **(exports – is exported – exporting**) to different countries .
2- The prisoner escaped , but he (**had caught – has caught – was being caught – was caught**)
3- More long roads (**has been built – has built – have built – have been built**) all over the country nowadays .
4- The letters (**are writing – are written – are written – will write – are being written**) now .
5- A nice story **(was told – told – is telling – was telling**) to the child .
6- Don't let yourself (**cheated – cheating – be cheated – to cheat**) .
7- He had an accident and **(took – takes – has taken – was taken**) to the hospital .
8- May this letter (**send – will send – be sent – sends**) tomorrow ?
9- His suggestion (**will discuss – is being discussed – is discussing – will be discussing**) today .
10-When he returned home , he found that all his money (**is – had – had been – will be**) stolen .

B- Change the passive into active:

1. She can help me.

…………………………………………………………………………………

2. We shall see them.

…………………………………………………………………………………

3. Ali took the pen.

…………………………………………………………………………………

4. I must see the doctor.

…………………………………………………………………………………

5. You are selling yams.

…………………………………………………………………………………

6. The pupils have bought the books.

…………………………………………………………………………………

7. We write the letter.

…………………………………………………………………………………

8. I offered them a new house.

…………………………………………………………………………………

9. She will repair the roof.

…………………………………………………………………………………

10. She is singing a beautiful song.

…………………………………………………………………………………

11. The cat killed the mice.

…………………………………………………………………………………

12. I will listen to good music.

…………………………………………………………………………………

13. Mike is reading a book.

…………………………………………………………………………………

14. You must take the medicine.

…………………………………………………………………………………

15. Moussa can do this exercise.

…………………………………………………………………………………

The answer:

1- I can be helped by her.
2- They will be seen by us.
3- The pen was taken by Ali.
4- The doctor must be seen by me
5- Yams are being sold by you.
6- The books have been bought by the pupils.
7- The letter is written by us.
8- A new house was offered to them by me.
9-The roof will be repaired by her.
10- A beautiful song is being sung by her.
11- The mice were killed by the cat.

12-Good music will be listened to by me.
13- A book is being read by Mike.
14- The medicine must be taken by you.
15-This exercise can be done by Moussa.

C:Change the following sentences into passive voice:

1. I know him.
2. His conduct will surprise you.
3. His failure disgusted his parents.
4. One must endure what one cannot cure.
5. They say that honesty is the best policy.
6. He had to pay the fine.
7. What does this box contain?
8. I want you to do this.
9. I expect you to help her.
10. Women like men to adore them.
11. One should help the poor.
12. The farmer grows vegetables.

Answers:

1. He is known to me.
2. You will be surprised at his conduct.
3. His parents were disgusted at his failure.
4. What cannot be cured must be endured.
5. It is said that honesty is the best policy.
6. The fine had to be paid by him.
7. What is contained in this box?
8. I want this to be done by you.
9. I expect her to be helped by you.
10. Women like to be adored by men.
11. The poor should be helped.
12. Vegetables are grown by the farmer.

D: Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Ahmed may give you his camera . (**Ahmed's camera**)
* ....
2- We must reduce the number of cars on Cairo roads . (**must be**)
* ....
3- Bill invented the telephone . (**was**)
* ....
4- The teacher was watching us inside the class . (**we**)
* ....

5- The safe was opened and money was stolen . **(The thief)**
* ....

6- Nobody can deny that he is honest . **(It can't)**
* ....

7- Dina has just finish these reports . **(have)**
* ....

8- Salma was looking for her camera . **(Salma's camera)**
* ....

9- The postman gave her a letter this morning . **(was)**
* ....

10- Large sums of money are spent on scientific research.**(The government)**
* ....

11- All the reports have already been typed . **(He)**
* ....

12- He didn't marry till he had furnished his flat . **(been)**
* ....

13- The police will catch the murderer sooner or later . **(be)**
* ....

14- They are using their computer now . **(being)**
* ....

15- They don't study French . **(passive)**
* ....

16- They won't buy a new car . **(passive)**
* ....

17- They didn't buy a new car . **(passive)**
* ....

****

The passive:تابع: المبنى للمجهول

<u>*تحويل الأسئلة إلى المبنى للمجهول:</u>

1-Does he speak English?
Yes,he speaks English.
He speaks English.
English is spoken.
<u>Is English spoken by him?</u>

<u>*خطوات تحويل الأسئلة إلى المبنى للمجهول:</u>

1- نجيب على السؤال إجابة كاملة دون رد فى حالة وجود أداة إستفهام.
2-حذف (**Yes – (No+not** إن وجدوا.
3- نحول الجملة إلى صيغة المجهول.
4- نحول الجملة إلى صيغة الإستفهام.
5- أداة الإستفهام إن وجدت.
6-**by**
7- يتم تغيير ضميرالفاعل إلى ضمير مفعول.

2- Does she cook rice well?
*………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………

3- Do they read books?
*Yes,they read books.
They read books.
Books are read.
<u>Are books read by them?</u>

4- Do you read books?
*……………………………………………………..
…………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………

5- How does he speak English?
* He speaks English.
English is spoken.

<u>How is English spoken by him?</u>

6- Where does she study Arabic?
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………
7- Why do you study English?
* We study English.
English is studied.
<u>Why is English studied by you?</u>

8- Where do you buy clothes?
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………

9- Did you buy clothes?
* I bought clothes.
Clothes were bought.
Were clothes bought by <u>you</u>?

10-Did they sell a car?
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………

11**- When did they buy a car?**
They bought a car.
A car was bought.
<u>When was a car bought by them?</u>

12-Why did you eat much food?
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………
*………………………………………………………

13- When will he finish the job?
* He will finish the job.
The job will be finished.
<u>When will the job be finished by him?</u>

14-How could he climb the tree?
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………

15**- When have they found the treasure?**
They have found the treasure.
The treasure has been found.
<u>When has the treasure been found by them?</u>

16-How have they won the match?
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………

17- **Where are you playing tennis?**
I'm playing tennis.
Tennis is being played .
<u>Where is tennis being played by you?</u>

18- **When is he visiting Tanta?**
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………

19- **How was he studying languages?**
He was studying languages.
Languages were being studied.
<u>How were languages being studied?</u>

20-Why were they studying languages?
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………
*……………………………………………………………

الأمر من المعلوم للمجهول

(Let + المفعول به + be + p.p)

Ex:

1- Open the door. ⟶ Let the door be opened.
2- **Read the letter**. ⟶ Let ....
3- **Throw the ball**. ⟶ Let ....
4- **Draw a picture.** ⟶ Let ....
5- **Help the poor.** ⟶ Let ....

Changing the passive into active:

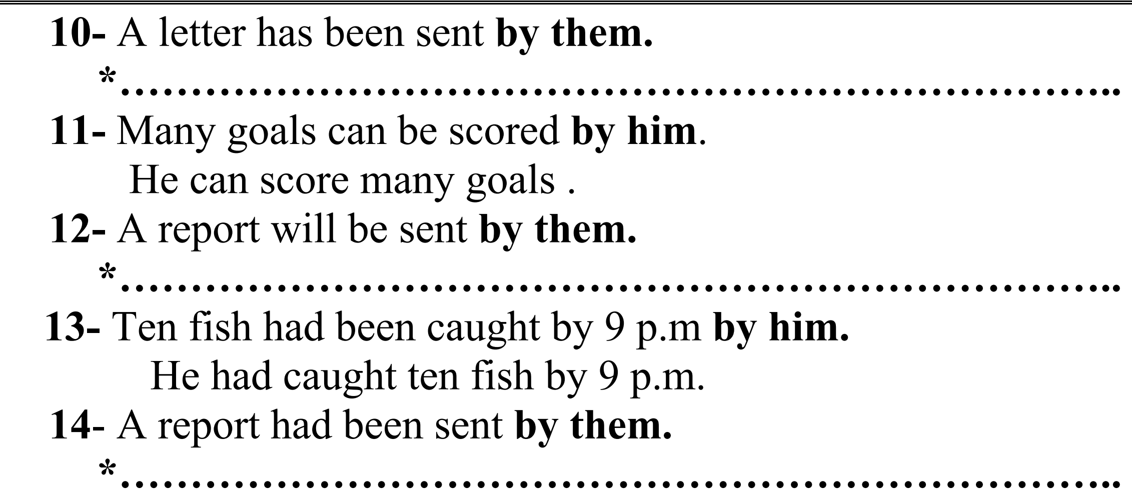
تحويل المبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم:

1- English is spoken well **by him.**
*He speaks **English** well**.**

تحويل المبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم:

1- نبدأ بضمير الفاعل لضمير المفعول بعد **by**.
2- نضع الفعل الاصلى(من التصريف الثالث) فى الزمن المناسب حسب **V.to be**
3- نحذف **by + V.to be**
4- نضع فاعل المجهول ثم باقى الجملة.

2- Many letters are written **by her** everyday**.**
*..
3- Many crops were grown **by them.**
*They grew many crops.
4- A letter was sent **by him.**
*..
5-A hospital is being built **by them .**
*They are building a hospital .
6- Some letters are being written by him.
*..
7- Stories were being read **by her .**
*She was reading stories .
8- A report was sent **by them.**
*..
9- Two goals have been scored **by him** .
*He has scored two goals .



10- A letter has been sent **by them.**

*…………………………………………………………..

11- Many goals can be scored **by him**.

He can score many goals .

12- A report will be sent **by them.**

*…………………………………………………………..

13- Ten fish had been caught by 9 p.m **by him.**

He had caught ten fish by 9 p.m.

14- A report had been sent **by them.**

*…………………………………………………………..

A:Rewrite the following sentences so that the verbs will be in the active voice.

1. **We are taught grammar by Ms Sullivan.**
2. **He was praised by the teacher.**
3. **The injured were taken to the hospital by the firemen.**
4. **The town was destroyed by an earthquake.**
5. **The teacher was pleased with the boy's work.**
6. **The building was damaged by the fire.**
7. **By whom were you taught French?**
8. **You will be given a ticket by the manager.**
9. **The streets were thronged with spectators.**
10. **We will be blamed by everyone.**
11. **The trees were blown down by the wind.**
12. **The thieves were caught by the police.**
13. **The letter was posted by Alice.**
14. **We were received by the hostess.**

Answers:

1. **Ms Sullivan teaches us grammar.**
2. **The teacher praised him.**
3. **The firemen took the injured to the hospital.**
4. **An earthquake destroyed the town.**
5. **The boy's work pleased the teacher.**
6. **The fire damaged the building.**
7. **Who taught you French?**
8. **The manager will give you a ticket.**
9. **Spectators thronged the streets.**
10. **Everyone will blame us.**
11. **The wind blew down the trees.**
12. **The police caught the thieves.**
13. **Alice posted the letter.**
14. **The hostess received us.**

تحويل السؤال من مبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم:

1- **Is English spoken by him?**

English is spoken by him.

He speaks English.

Does he speak English?

خطوات تحويل السؤال من مبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم:

1- نجيب على السؤال إجابة كاملة دون رد فى حالة وجود أداة إستفهام.

2-حذف **Yes – (No + not).**

3- نحول الجملة إلى صيغة المعلوم.

4- نحول الجملة إلى صيغة الإستفهام.

5- أداة الإستفهام إن وجدت نضعها في بداية الجملة.

2- **Is rice cooked well by her?**

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

3- Are books read by them?

Books are read by them.

They read books.

Do they read books?

4- Are letters written by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

5- How is English spoken by him?

* English is spoken by him.

* He speaks English.

***How** does he speak English**?**

6- Where are languages taught by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

7- Why is English studied by you?

*English is studied by you.

* We study English.

***Why** do you study English**?**

8- Where is cotton grown by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

9- Were clothes bought by you?

*Clothes were bought by you.

* I bought clothes.

***Did you buy clothes?**

10- Was a letter sent by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

11**- When was a car bought by them?**

A car was bought by them.

They bought a car.

When did they buy a car?

12- How were shops closed by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

13-**When will the job be finished by him?**

*The job will be finished by him.

* He will finish the job.

***When** will he finish the job**?**

14-**How will the report sent by them?**

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

15**- When has the treasure been found by them?**

The treasure has been found by them.

They have found the treasure.

When have they found the treasure?

16- Where is tennis being played by you?

Tennis is being played by you .

You are playing tennis.

Where are you playing tennis**?**

17- How are letters being sent by them?

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

*…………………………………………………………………………..

18- <u>How were languages being studied by him?</u>

Languages were being studied by him.
He was studying languages.
How was he studying languages**?**

19- <u>Why were vegetables being grown by them?</u>

*………………………………………………………………………..
*………………………………………………………………………..
*………………………………………………………………………..

20- <u>When was the letter being sent by her?</u>

*………………………………………………………………………..
*………………………………………………………………………..
*………………………………………………………………………..

:B: Change from Passive into Active Voice

1. It was answered when I was out .
2. All these letters must be signed3 .
3. -He must have been terribly disappointed .
4. She was brought up by an old lady .
5. Has she been invited, too ؟
6. Is it going to be understood؟
7. Are you going to be taught French, too ؟
8. By whom was Helen helped ؟
9. Hasn't it been reported yet؟
10. Is he being interviewed ؟
11. We are being told to depart .
12. This language was spoken years ago .
13. Her aunt was killed in an accident .
14. This subject was given last month .

Passive constructions
تركيبات في صيغة المبنى للمجهول

يعتقد أن   يقال أن

It is said that – It is believed that
He is said to – He is believed to

* يستخدم هذا الاسلوب للتعبير عما يقوله أو يعتقده الناس

Ex :

1- People say that he is nearly 120 years old . **(Active)**
* It is said that he is nearly 120 years old **.** **(passive)**
2- It is expected that tomorrow's temperature will reach 25 . **(passive)**

تعبيرات اخرى

It is reported that **لقد اخبر أن**
It is known that **من المعلوم أن**
It is thought that **من المعتقد أن**
It is supposed that **يفترض أن**
It is considered that **يعتبر أن**
It is understood that **من المفهوم أن**
It (was) alleged that **زعم أن**

Ex :

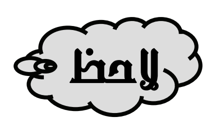
People believed he was innocent . (**active**)
* He was believed to be innocent . (**passive**)



أ- ياتى بعد that **جملة (فعل ⟵ فاعل)**
ب- ياتى بعد to **المصدر بدون** to
حـ- تستخدم that **إذا بدات الجملة بـ** It
د- تستخدم to **إذا بدأت الجملة باسم أو ضمير فاعل غير** it

Ex :

People believed that Rami was clever . (**Act.**)
* It was believed that Rami was clever . (**pass.**)
= Rami was believed to be clever . (**pass.**)



أ- إذا كان فعل القول (believed) ماضى فعند التحويل للمجهول يحول الى :
* It was believed that .
= Rami was believed to (**المصدر**)
ب- إذا كان فعل القول (believe) مضارع فعند التحويل للمجهول يحول الى :
* It is believed that **أو** Rami is believed to be .

Ex :

1- People believe that Rami is clever . (**Act**.) **معلوم**
* It is believed that Rami is clever .(**pass.**) **مجهول**
= Rami is believed to be clever . (**pass.**)
2- People believed that Heba lost her way . (**Act.**)
* It was believed that Heba lost her way . (**pass**.)
= Heba was believed to have lost her way . (**pass.**)

لاحظ

أ- إذا كان فعل الجملة (v.to be) am – is – are (was – were) *** فيكون المصدر be كما في مثال 1**

ب- إذا كان فعل الجملة ماضيا غير v.to be فيكون المصدر have ثم نضع بعدها التصريف الثالث للفعل واذا كان مضارعا فنضع مصدر الفعل بدون to



**** أن التعبير الاتى يستخدم فى جميع الازمنة :**

- It has been agreed that hard work is necessary for success .

من المتفق عليه أن العمل الجاد ضرورى للنجاح



A- Choose the correct answer :

1- Dr. Ali is (**expecting – thought – regards – believe**) to be the best surgeon in the world .
2- She (**is known – known – knowing – will know**) for her role in helping the poor .
3-The criminal **(reported – reports – has reported – was reported**) to (**escaped – escape – have escaped**) .
4- Dr Zewail is known (**that he – to be – he was – he is**) the first Arab to win the Noble prize .
5- It is (**believed – believes – believe – believe – believing**) that there is no water on the moon .

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- People said that his car was damaged in an accident . **(His car)**
2- He said that a young man had stolen the money from the bank .(**alleged**)
3- It is expected that the strike will end soon . (**The stri**ke)
4- The boy is believed to be wearing a white pullover . (**It**)
5- It is alleged that he kicked a policeman . (**He**)
6- It is said that she works 16 hours a day . (**She**)
7- He is thought to finish his computer course . (**It is**)
8- I was reported that women took part in the demonstration.(**Women are**)

ملاحظات هامة جداً على الكلام غير المباشر :

أ- لا يجوز تحويل أكثر من فعل الى صيغة الاستفهام اى لا يأتى الفعل قبل الفاعل إلا مرة واحدة .. ويأتى الفعل الثانى في صورته الخبرية " الإجابة "
ب- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع نختار الفعل في احدث زمن " ماضى تام – ماضى – مضارع "
حـ- إذا كان فعل القول ماضى نختار الفعل في اقدم زمن " ماضى تام – ماضى – مضارع " " (ماضى – مضارع) "

د- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ **Tell me** أو **I don't know** أو إذا انتهت الجملة بـ ". " تستخدم " اداة الاستفهام كاداة ربط يأتى بعدها فاعل ثم فعل "

Choose :-

1- He says he (**will – would**) visit us .
2- They said they **(visit – had visited – visited**) Tanta .
3- Do you know where ………… ?
a) does he live **b) he lives** **c) lives**
4- Tell me when …………
a) will he come **b) will come** **c) he will come**
5- Can you tell me what ………. ?
a) is the time **b) the time was** **c) the time is**

Indirect speech
الجملة الخبرية

*****خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية :**
الكلام المباشر الى الكلام الغير مباشر :-

1- نحذف الاقواس وتربط بكلمة (that**)**
2- نغير الضمائر (I – we – you **) - لا نغير الضمائر (** he , she , It , they **)**
3- نغير الازمنة إذا كان فعل القول ماضياً كما يلى:

مضارع بسيط ← **ماضى بسيط**
مضارع مستمر ← **ماضى مستمر**
مضارع تام ← **ماضى تام**

here	there
this	that
these	those
now	then
today	that day
Last week	The week before
DIRECT	**REPORTED**

could ←—— can الناقصة الى ماضيها

yesterday	the previous day
tomorrow	the next day The following day

* الافعال

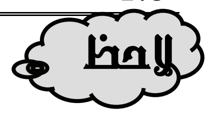
DIRECT	REPORTED
is seeing	was seeing
sees	saw
saw	saw/had seen
has seen	had seen
will see	would see
is going to see	was going to see
can see	could see

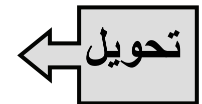
4- إذا كان فعل القول مضارعاً فلا نغير الازمنة

Ex :

1- Rami says , " I'm ready to go "
* Rami says that he is ready to go .
2- Noha says " My uncle will buy a car . "
2- Noha says that her uncle will buy a car .
3- He says " Your friends are going to Paris . "
* ………………………………………………………… .
4- She says , " Heba cooks well ."
* ………………………………………………………… .
5- She said , " Heba cooks well . "
* She said that Heba cooked well .
6- They said to Rami , " we want to go out . "
* They told Rami that they wanted to go out .
7- Adel said to Rami "My uncle bought me a new watch . "
* ………………………………………………………… .
8- She said to me , " I have never been to Paris "
* ………………………………………………………… .
9- He said to his teacher , " I studied my lessons hard . "
* ………………………………………………………… .
10- They said to me, "We could win the cup. "

* ………………………………………………………… .





say(s) ⟶ say(s) - say(s) to ⟶ tells
said ⟶ said - said to ⟶ told

ب- ربط الجملة بـ that (اختيارى)
حـ- الضمائر يتم تحويلها وفقا لمعنى الجملة

Ex :

1- Rami said " My friends attended the party "
- Rami said that his friends had attended the party .
2- They said to Kamal , " You will go at 2 p.m ."
- They told Kamal that he would go at 2 p.m .
3- She said " I help my friend well . "
- She said that she helped her friend well .
4- She said to Noha " Our friends went to Giza and Elfayoum . "
* …………………………………… .
5- He said to me " I'll go alone ."
* …………………………………… .

A:Choose:

1- Ahmed says that he (**went-gone-goes-had gone**) to Alex every year.
2- He (**told-said-asked-ordered**) he was living with his uncle.
3- He said that he (**had written-would write-is writing-was writing**) a letter then.
4- He told me that he (**will reach-would reach-reached-had reached**) Cairo the following week.
5- Mohamed (**said-told-asked-spoke**) he had never been to Luxor.
6- He said that he (**attended-was attending-had attended-has attended**) the meeting the day before.
7- He said that he (**would see-has seen-had seen-was seen**) a new film on TV the night before.
8- He told me that he (**will visit-would visit-is visiting-visited**) me the next day.
9- He said just now that he (**bought-has bought-would buy-will buy**) a new car next month.

10-He said that he (**doesn't go-wouldn't go-hadn't gone-won't go**) to school the previous day.

B:Choose the correct answer:

1. Susan said, "I met your sister last week."

   (A) Susan said that I met your sister last week.
   (B) Susan said that I had met your sister last week.
   (C) Susan said that she had met my sister that week.
   (D) Susan said that she had met my sister the week before.

2. Ivon said, "You are not listening to me."

   (A) Ivon said that you are not listening to her.
   (B) Ivon said that you were not listening to her.
   (C) Ivon said that I was not listening to her.
   (D) Ivon said I had not been listening to her.

3. Bee Lee said, "I am very happy today because my father has given me a car." (A month later, you report his statement.)

   (A) Bee Lee said that he was very happy that day because his father has given him a car.
   (B) Bee Lee said that he was very happy that day because his father had given him a car.
   (C) Bee Lee said that he is very happy today because his father has given him a car.
   (D) Bee Lee said that he was very happy today because his father has given him a car.

4. The headmistress says, "The young people of today are tomorrow's leaders." (An hour later, you report her statement.)

   (A) The headmistress says that the young people of today are tomorrow's leaders.
   (B) The headmistress says that the young people of that day are the next day's leaders.

(C) The headmistress said that the young people of that day are the next day's leaders.
(D) The headmistress said that the young people of yesterday are today's leaders.

5. The children said, "We will build a sand-castle ourselves."

(A) The children said that they would build a sand-castle themselves.
(B) The children said that they will build a sand-castle ourselves.
(C) The children said that we would build a sand-castle ourselves.
(D) The children said that we will build a sand-castle themselves.

6. He said, "I am looking at the diagram."

(A) He said that I am looking at the diagram.
(B) He said that I was looking at the diagram.
(C) He says that he was looking at the diagram.
(D) He said that he was looking at the diagram.

7. Steven said, "I don't have any money to pay for this ticket."

(A) Steven said that he don't have any money to pay for this ticket.
(B) Steven said that he doesn't have any money to pay for that ticket.
(C) Steven said that he didn't have any money to pay for that ticket.
(D) Steven said that he hadn't had any money to pay for that ticket.

8. Jill said, "Jack must give his answer to me."

(A) Jill said that Jack must give her answer to him.
(B) Jill said that Jack had to give his answer to her.

(C) Jill said that Jack had to give his answer to me.
(D) Jill said that Jack must give his answer to me.

9. She said, "I have been sewing from morning until now." (The next day, you report her statement)

(A) She said that she had been sewing from morning until then.
(B) She said that she has been sewing from morning until then.
(C) She said that she had been sewing from morning until now.
(D) She said that she has been dewing from morning until now.

10. Carl said, "You may meet them next month."

(A) Carl said that you may meet them next month.
(B) Carl said that I may meet them next month.
(C) Carl said that I might meet them the following month.
(D) Carl said that I may meet them the following month.

C: Change into reported speech:

1- "It's raining." she said.

- She said that it was raining.

2- He said to her, "I respect you."

-He told her that he respected her.

3- "I saw María in the supermarket yesterday," said Miranda.

-Miranda said that she saw María in the supermarket the day before

4- "We've lived here for three years," he said.

-He said that they had lived there for three years.

5- "I'll bring a pasta salad," said Petro.

Petro said that he would bring a pasta salad.

6- "Mark's going to install solar panels," said Miranda.

……………………………………………………………………

7- "They found gold here," said the geology teacher.

……………………………………………………………………

8- "Jenny can't speak French," said Peter.

……………………………………………………………………

9- He said to us "I first met my wife in Seville,".

……………………………………………………………………

10- "I want your homework handed in by tomorrow," he said.

……………………………………………………………………

11- "My mother made these cakes," said Juan.

……………………………………………………………………

12- "I'm feeling tired now," said David.

……………………………………………………………………

D :Change into the reported speech.

1. " I have something to show you," I said to her.

-I told her I had something to show her.

2. " Nothing grows in my garden. It never gets any sun," she said.

-She said nothing grew in her garden as it never got any sun.

3. " I'm going away tomorrow, mother," he said.

-He told his mother he was going away the next day.

4. " I've been in London for a month but so far I haven't had time to visit the Tower," said Rupert.

-Rupert said he had been in London for a month but hadn't had time to visit the Tower.

5. " It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday," I remarked.

-I remarked that it wasn't so foggy that day as it had been the day before.

6. " The new underpass is being officially opened the day after tomorrow," said the BBC reporter.

-The BBC reporter said that the new underpass was being officially opened two days later.

7. " We have moved into our new flat, " said my aunt.

-My aunt said that they had moved into their new flat.

8. " We have a lift but very often it doesn't work," they said.

-They said they had a lift but very often it didn't work.

9. " I can see the Eiffel Tower from one of the windows of my flat," he said.

-He said he could see the Eiffel Tower from one of the windows of his flat.

10. " I've no idea what the time is," said his daughter.

-His daughter said she had no idea what the time was.

11. He said, " My wife has just been made a judge."

-He said that his wife had just been made a judge.

12. " I'll come with you as soon as I'm ready," she replied.

-She replied that she'd come with me as soon as she was ready.

13. " I have a German lesson this afternoon and I haven't done my homework yet," said the small boy.

-The small boy said he had a German lesson that afternoon and hadn't done his homework.

14. " If you let the iron get too hot, you will scorch your clothes," I warned her.

-I warned her that if she let the iron get too hot she would scorch her clothes.

15. " You haven't given me quite enough. The bill is for £14 and you've paid me only £13," he pointed out.

-He pointed out that I hadn't given him quite enough. He added that the bill was for £14 and I had paid him only £13.

16. Ann said, " Englishmen make good husbands because they're nearly always willing to help in the house,"

-Ann said that Englishmen made good husbands because they were nearly always willing to help in the house.

17. " I don't know what to do with all my plums. I suppose I'll have to make jam," she said.

-She said she didn't know what to do with all her plums and supposed she'd have to make jam.

18. " I couldn't get into the house because I had lost my key, so I had to break a window," he said.

-He said he couldn't / hadn't been able to get into the house because he had lost his key, so he had / had had to break a window.

19. " The mirror is there so that you can see yourselves when you're dancing," the ballet teacher said.

-The ballet teacher said that the mirror was there so that we could see ourselves when we were dancing.

20. " Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius, " our science teacher explained.

-Our science teacher explained that water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

21. Mum says, " I don't know what your father will say when he sees your school report."

-Mum says she doesn't know what my father will say when he sees my school report.

22. " If you heat ice, it melts," the little girl said.

-The little girl said that if you heat ice it melts.

23. " You've got my umbrella," I said

-I said you'd got my umbrella.

24. " This is a quite good model, madam. I use one of them myself," said the salesman.

-The salesman said that was a quite good model and that he used one of them himself.

25. Then Macbeth enters and says, "I have done the deed."

-Then Macbeth enters and says he has done the deed.

....

- إذا كان فعل القول ماضي ومعه كلمة تدل على الوقت الحالى والكلام قد انتهى منذ فترة قصيرة (حالا أو توا) لا تتغير الأزمنة أو ظروف الزمان أو المكان.

Ex:

* He said **just now** " I will visit the zoo tomorrow. "

He said just now that he will visit the zoo tomorrow.

- إذا كانت الجملة تدل على عادة متكررة لا تتغير الأزمنة أو ظروف المكان أو الزمان .

Ex:

* He said " I go to school **everyday** at 7 o'clock. "

- He said that he goes to school every day at 7 o'clock.

الأمر و الطلب

♣ To change the command sentences into indirect speech {reported speech },

we omit { said /said to}

And use **{ told / asked / ordered / commanded / advised / warned / begged }** in reported instructions.

لتحويل الجمل الامرية او التعليمات الى كلام غير مباشر نستخدم { told / asked / ordered / commanded / advised / warned / begged } ونحذف الاقواس ونضعto+inf.

♣Examples:

Direct « Do your homework, Amira,» said Dina.
Indirect Dina **told** Amira **to** do **her** homework.
Or Dina **asked** Amira **to** do **her** homework.
Direct Mr. said, « Bring your toys, children. »
Indirect Mr. Alaa **told** the children **to** bring **their** toys.
Direct Dad said, « Take your present. »
Indirect Dad **asked me to** take **my** present.
Direct The officer said to his man,« Fire ! » اطلق النار
Indirect The officer **ordered** his man **to** fire
Direct The doctor said to me, « Give up smoking and go to bed early. »
Indirect The doctor advised me to give up smoking and to go to bed early.

فى حالة النهى نحول Don't الى not to

Direct « Don't make so much noise,»said dad
Indirect Dad ***warned*** me ***not to*** make so much noise.
Direct « Don't fight with your brother, Mustafa,» said Mohamed
Indirect Mohamed ***told*** Mustafa ***not to*** fight with his brother.

خطوات تحويل السؤال المباشر إلى السؤال غير المباشر:

1- تحويل أداةالإستفهام إلى أداة ربط ثم الفاعل ثم الفعل فى الزمن المناسب (حسب زمن فعل القول)ثم باقى الجملة مع تغيير ما يلزم.

2- نستخدم If or Whether

إذا بدأالسؤال بفعل ثم نستخدم الفاعل ثم الفعل فى الزمن المناسب (حسب زمن فعل القول)ثم باقى الجملة مع تغيير ما يلزم.

<u>Yes or No Question</u> **<u>سؤال هل</u>**

Direct « Will you visit your cousin? » Rehab / asked – said /.

Indirect Rehab asked <u>*me if I would*</u> visit <u>*my*</u> cousin.

لتحويل سؤال هل الى غير مباشر / كمايلى :

Sub. + {asked/wondered/wanted to know}…+{ If/whether}

....

<u>Examples</u> :

Direct « Are you having your dinner,Sahar?» asked Gehad.

Indirect Gehad **<u>asked</u>** Sahar **<u>if she was</u>** having **<u>her</u>** dinner.

اذا كان السؤال ب Do//Does **نحذفهما ونضع الفعل فى الماضى البسيط وإذا كان به** Did**♣نضع الفعل فى الماضى التام.**

Direct Mr. Ahmed asked us," Have you finished your homework"؟

.Indirect Mr. Ahmed **<u>wanted to know whether we had finished our</u>** homework

Or

.Indirect Mr. Ahmed **<u>asked us whether we had finished our</u>** homework

Direct «Did you have your dinner, children?» Asked mum

.Indirect Mum **<u>asked</u>** children **<u>if they had had their</u>** dinner

Direct « How old are you ? » asked Aya

Indirect Aya asked me how old I was.

لتحويل سؤال wh**. أو أى أداة استفهام أخرى الى غير مباشر نستخدم اداة الاستفهام كاداة ربط ثم الفاعل ثم الفعل.**

Sub{ asked/ wondered / wanted to know }obj.+ { wh } + Sub.pron. + past v.

****

<u>Examples</u>

Direct « Where will you go, Nehal? » asked Asmaa.

Indirect Asmaa asked Nehal where she would go.

اذا كان الفعل المساعد **do / does / did** نحذفهم و نحول الفعل الاساسى كما ذكرنا

Direct Ibrahim asked Mustafa, «What does your mother cook?»

Indirect Ibrahim **asked** Mustafa what his mother cooked.

Direct « What were you doing yesterday? »asked El- Shaymaa.

Indirect E-Shaymaa asked me what I had been doing

Direct «When did you have your supper, Wafaa? »asked Hala

Indirect Halaa sked wafaa when she had had her supper.

Direct «What's your name?» Mr. Ahmed asked.

Indirect Mr. Ahmed asked me what my name is.

****

Exercises

:A. CHOOSE THE BEST WAY TO COMPLETE THE SENTENCES BELOW

-1 **Please tell me** ....

b) where the bus stop be **a) where is the bus stop**
d) where the bus stop is **c) where stops the bus**

-2 **I told him**...

a) what the homework was **b) what was the homework**
c) what was to be the homework **d) what is the homework**

-3 **I think**...

a) will be the plane on time **b) the plane will be on time**
c) the plane to be on time **d) it will be on time the plane**

-4 **I didn't know**...

a) what he mean **b) what did he mean**
c) what did he meant **d) what he meant**

-5 **He said**...

a) that the weather colder than usual **b) the weather be colder than usual**

c) the weather was colder than usual d) the weather it is colder than usual

-6 **I think**...

a) today it is Wednesday **b) that is today Wednesday**
c) today is Wednesday **d) today be Wednesday**

-7 **I asked her**...

a) what is the answer **b) what the answer**
c) what was the answer **d) what the answer was**

-8 **Do you remember**..

a) when is her birthday **b) when her birthday is**
c) when her birthday **d) when be her birthday**

-9 **He asked me**...

a) what is my name **b) what was my name**
c) what my name was **d) what my name be**

-10 **I warned him**...

a) to be not late **b) don't be late**
b) not to be late **d) he is not late**

B:Turn the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. **'What do you want?' she asked him.**
2. **'Are you coming with us?' he asked me.**
3. **He asked, 'When do you intend to make the payment?'**
4. **'Do you come from China?' said the prince to the girl.**
5. **The poor man exclaimed, 'Will none of you help me?'**
6. **'Which way should I go?' asked the little girl.**
7. **Alladin said to the magician, 'What have I done to deserve so severe a punishment?'**
8. **'Don't you know the way home?' I said to her.**
9. **'Do you write a good hand?' the teacher said to the student.**
10. **'Have you anything to say on behalf of the accused?' said the judge finally.**
11. **'Have you anything to tell me, little bird?' asked Ulysses.**
12. **'Who are you, sir, and what do you want?' they asked.**
13. **The king was impressed with the magician and asked, 'What can I do for you?'**

14. She asked, ‘What is it that makes you stronger and braver than other men?’

15. ‘Can you solve this problem?’ he asked me.

Answers:

1. She asked him what he wanted.
2. He asked me if I was coming/going with them.
3. He enquired when I/he/she intended to make the payment.
4. The prince asked the girl if she came from China.
5. The poor man exclaimed whether none of them would help him.
6. The little girl asked which way she should go.
7. Alladin asked the magician what he had done to deserve so severe a punishment.
8. I asked her whether she did not know the way home.
9. The teacher asked the student if he/she wrote a good hand.
10. The judge finally asked whether he/she had anything to say on behalf of the accused.
11. Ulysses asked the little bird whether it had anything to tell him.
12. They asked who he was and what he wanted.
13. The king was impressed with the magician and asked what he could do for him.
14. She asked him what was it that made him stronger and braver than other men.
15. He asked me if I could solve that problem.

C:Change into reported speech:

1. "Are you working tomorrow?" (a woman is asking you a question)

She asked me if I was working tomorrow.

2. "Has he ever played golf." (a man is asking a woman a question about her brother)

He asked her if her brother had ever played golf.

3. "Do you think the car is okay?" (a woman is asking a male mechanic a question)

She asked the mechanic if he though the car was okay.

4. "Do you have your homework?" (a teacher is asking her students a question)

The teacher asked the class if they had their homeowork.

5. "Can I borrow your car?" (a female friend name Donna is asking you a question)

Donna asked me if she could borrow my car.

6. "Will you be at home later today?" (a man is asking a friend a question)

He wanted to know if she would be home later today.

7. "Did the package arrive yet?" (a man is asking his assistant a question)

He wanted to know if the package had arrived yet.

8. "Has he ever been married?" (a woman is asking a friend a question about a man)

She wanted to know if he had ever been married.

9. "Are watermelons still on sale?" (a woman is asking a store employee a question)

She wanted to know if watermelons were still on sale.

10. "Is anyone sitting there?" (a woman in a theatre is asking you a question)

A woman asked me if anyone was sitting there.

11-"Are you a teacher?" (a man is asking you a question)

He asked if I was a teacher.

:Notes

1-إذا كان السؤال يبدأ ب (Would you mind + v.+ ing) تحول الى:

He asked me to+infinitive

Or **He wanted me to+ infinitive**

1] He said , « Would you mind opening the door?»

Indirect **He asked me to open the door.**

2- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ ب Would you like to+infinitive

تحول الى He suggested+v+ing

2] He said ,« Would you like to have a cup of tea? »

Indirect **He suggested a cup of tea. -- or—He suggested having a cup of tea.**

اذا كان السؤال يبدأ ب **Would you like +noun** تحول الى**:**

He offered me+ noun

«؟He said, « Would you like tea [3

.Indirect **He offered me tea**

****

.What about tea?» he said » [4

.Indirect **He suggested tea**

.what about going to the cinema tomorrow ?» he said » [5

.Indirect **He suggested going to the cinema the next day**

.Why don't you ask him? »he said » [6

Indirect **He suggested asking him** -- or -- **He advised me to ask him**

7] « Could I have a cup of tea? » he said

Indirect **He asked me for a cup of tea**

8] « Could you live alone?» he said

Indirect **He asked me if I could live alone**

Change into reported speech

1- 'What about going to the cinema tonight?' Beth said to her husband.

- ***Beth suggested*** ………………………………………………………

2- 'Why don't you go and buy the papers?' Rose said to Arthur.

- ***Rose suggested*** ……………………..…………………………....

3- 'The meat wasn't well done at all', My mother said.

- ***My mother complained*** ……………………………………….……

4- 'Would you like to have dinner out tomorrow?' She told her friend.

- ***She invited*** …………………………………………………..…

5- 'I won't let you go out if you don't finish your homework', Fred told his daughter.

- ***Fred threatened*** ……………………………………………………….

6- 'You'd better stay in bed today', his mother told her.

- ***His mother recommended*** ………………………………………………

7- 'I'm sorry I'm late', Jesse said.

- ***Jesse apologized*** …………………………………………….

8- 'I'm sure Sarah caused the accident', the inspector said.

- ***The inspector blamed*** ……………………………………………...

9- 'Please, let's go dancing', the girl said.

- ***The girl insisted*** ……………………………………………………….

10- 'Don't forget you have to go to the dentist', Barbara told her husband.

- ***Barbara reminded*** **………………………………………………………………**

11- 'I'll lend you the money', Arthur said to her.

- Arthur offered………………………………………………………………….

12- 'If you do it, I'll call the police', she said to the man.

- She threatened……………………………………………………………….

13- 'Thank you very much for giving me a lift', she told me.

- ***She thanked*** **……………………………………………………………**

➳In spoken English we often omit <u>that</u> in reported sentences.
➳We can use different words to report direct speech: said, answered,replied,told etc.
when we use <u>told</u> it must be followed by
the person who was told:

<u>Examples:</u>

1] Direct The children said, « we are doing our homework,Mr. Alaa. »
Indirect The children ***told*** Mr. Alaa ***that they were*** doing **their** homework.
2] Direct « I've eaten my food, Hala,» said Nehal.
Indirect Nehal ***told*** Hala ***that she had*** eaten ***her*** food.
3] direct The sons said, « We had our dinner, mum..»
Indirect The sons ***told*** mum ***that they had*** had ***their*** dinner.
4] Direct Gehad said, « I was writing my lesson, Mr. Ahmed. »
Indirect Gehad ***told*** Mr. Ahmed ***that she had been*** writing ***her*** lesson.
5] Direct « I did my homework yesterday, Adel.» Ali said.
Indirect Ali ***told*** Adel ***that he had done his*** homework ***the day before***.
6] Direct « you should do your homework, » dad said.
Indirect Dad ***told / advised*** / ***me that I had to*** do ***my*** homework.

<u>**ملحوظة: الحقائق العلمية يكون فعلها كما هو بدون تغيير:::**</u>

7] direct « The earth goes round the sun, » said the teacher.
Direct ***The teacher said that the earth goes round the sun.***
8] Direct Wafaa says, « I feel hungry »
Indirect ***Wafaa says she feels hungry.***

<u>**عند التحويل من مباشر الى غير مباشر نستخدم التحويلات الآتية :**</u>

❶اذا كان الحديث المباشر يحتوى على جملتين خبريتين نربطهما معاً بالعبارة:
{ and // { and that // and add that }

Direct Tom said, **«** I know that it is wrong. I shall try to do it better tomorrow **»**
Indirect Tom said **that he knew** that it **was** wrong **and added that he would** try to do it better **the next day**.

❷ يجب أن لا نغير زمن **الجملة** إذا كان ذلك سيؤدى الى اضطراب فى المعنى **:**
Direct He said , **«** My name is Ahmed. **»**
Indirect He said (that) his name is Ahmed.
❸اذا بدأت جملة الكلام المباشر بكلمة **yes** نحذفها ونحول **said** الى **answered** او **agreed**او **agreed to+inf** او**admitted+ing**
Direct : The boy said, " Yes, I ate the food. "(The boy admitted)(The boy agreed)
Indirect: The boy **admitted** eat**ing** the food.= The boy **agreed to** eat the food.
Direct He said, **«** Yes, this is my coat. **»**
Indirect He **answered in affirmative that it was his coat**.**انه اجاب باثبات**
❹اذا بدأت جملة الكلام المباشر بكلمة No نحذف said **ونحولها الى:**
refused to+inf* // answered in negative// denied*
Direct He said, **«** No, it isn't. **»**
Indirect He **answered in negative that it was not**. or He **denied to be so** هو أنكر أن يكون كذالك
****
❺اذا كانت جملة الكلام المباشر على صورة تحية نحول said to **الى wished اذا كانت وداع نحول** said **الى bade**
«.Direct He said to me , « Good morning . It's fine today
.Indirect He ***wished //greeted// me*** good morning ***and added it was*** fine ***that*** day
« .Direct He said to me ,«Goodbye. »I shall see you next week
.Indirect: He ***bade me*** goodbye ***and added that he would*** see ***me the following week***
« .Direct He said to me , « Thank you very much
.Indirect ***He thanked me very much***
❻اذا جاءت كلمة اعتذار مثل I'm sorry نحولها الى :
He apologized for +v.+ing

لاحظ التحويلات الآتية :

-Must / should ⟶ **had to** **mustn't / needn't** ⟶ **didn't have to**

Direct He said , « I must go now.»
Indirect He said ***he had to*** go then.
Direct He said , « I needn't go. »
Indirect He said ***that he didn't have to*** go.

❼اذا جاءت must **لتعبر عن الالزام او المنع تبقى كما هى:**

Direct Dad said to us, « You mustn't cross the road against the red light. »
Indirect Dad ***told*** us ***we mustn't*** cross the road against the red light.

❽نحول come here فى الكلام المباشر الى go there فى الكلام الغير مباشر

Direct He said to me, « I shall come here tomorrow. »
.Indirect He ***told*** me ***that he would go there the next day***

❾اذا كان الكلام المباشر جملة شرطية نحول حالة الشرط الأولى إلى الثانية اما الثانية والثالثة تبقى كما هى بدون تغيير.

Direct He said to me, « If I run fast, I will catch the train. »
Indirect He **told me that if he ran fast, he would** catch the train.
Direct He said , « If I were rich, I would buy a car. »
Indirect **He said that if he were rich, he would buy acar**.

لا تتغير التعبيرات الاتية عند التحويل الى الغير مباشر:

Direct He said to me , « you'd better get up early. »
Indirect He **told / advised / me that I 'd better** get up early.
Direct « You ought to read the instruction. » said he.
Indirect **He advised me to read the instruction**.

****

لاحظ الجمل الآتية عند التحويل إلى مباشر:

نلاحظ ان let **نحولها الى suggested+v.+ing**

{ .**Or {speaker+suggested+that+listener+should+inf**

1] Direct « Come with me, » said Menna
Indirect **Menna suggested that I should go with her**.
2] Direct He said, « Let's stay at home.»
Indirect **He suggested that we should** stay at home.
3] Direct He said, « Let them go home. »
Indirect **He suggested that they should go** home.

خطوات تحويل الغير مباشر إلى مباشر:

أ-بالنسبة للجملة الخبرية:

1- نحول فعل القول كما يلى:

say-(says)- said ⟵ say-(says) - said

say to ⟵ tell

(says) to ⟵ (tells)

– said to ⟵ told

2- نحذف That ونضع قوسى اقتباس"" للجملة بعد المفعول لفعل القول .

3 - نحول الضمائر حسب الجملة. 4- نكتب الأزمنة حسب الأحدث عكس تحويل الأزمنة عند التحويل إلى الغير مباشر:كما يلى

مضارع بسيط ⟶ ماضى بسيط

مضارع مستمر ⟶ ماضى مستمر

ماضى بسيطأو مضارع تام ⟶ ماضى تام

***الافعال الناقصة الى مضارعها can ⟶ could**

Ex:

Change into dirct speech

1- Rami says that he is ready to go .
Rami says , " I'm ready to go "
2- Noha says that her uncle will buy a car .
Noha says " My uncle will buy a car . "
3- He says that our friends are going to Paris .
He says " Your friends are going to Paris . "
4- She says that Heba cooks well .
She says , " Heba cooks well ."
5- She said that Heba cooked well .
She said , " Heba cooks well . "
6- They told Rami that they wanted to go out .
They said to Rami , " we want to go out . "
7- Adel told Rami that his uncle bought / (had bought) him a new watch .
Adel said to Rami "My uncle bought me a new watch . "

8- She told me that she had never been to Paris .
She said to me , " I have never been to Paris "
9- He told his teacher that he had studied his lessons hard .
He said to his teacher , " I studied my lessons hard . "
10- They told me that they could win the cup.
They said to me, "We could win the cup. "

:تابع: خطوات تحويل الغير مباشر إلى مباشر

:ب-بالنسبة للجملة الإستفهامية

:لها نفس خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية ولكن يتم تحويل كما يلى

1- **Whether Or If** ⟵ **(Does – Do – Did – Is -Was – Were - Have- ....إلخ)**
وذلك حسب زمن الفعل.

2- نستخدم أدوات الإستفهام كما هى يليها صيغة السؤال(الفعل المساعد المناسب لزمن الفعل ثم الفاعل) ثم باقى الجملة.

:ج-بالنسبة لجملة الأمر

Don't go ⟵ not to go
Go ⟵ to go

B:Turn the following sentences into direct speech.

1. **She asked him what he wanted.**
2. **He asked me if I was coming/going with them.**
3. **He enquired when I/he/she intended to make the payment.**
4. **The prince asked the girl if she came from China.**
5. **The poor man exclaimed whether none of them would help him.**
6. **The little girl asked which way she should go.**
7. **Alladin asked the magician what he had done to deserve so severe a punishment.**
8. **I asked her whether she did not know the way home.**
9. **The teacher asked the student if he/she wrote a good hand.**
10. **The judge finally asked whether he/she had anything to say on behalf of the accused.**
11. **Ulysses asked the little bird whether it had anything to tell him.**
12. **They asked who he was and what he wanted.**
13. **The king was impressed with the magician and asked what he could do for him.**
14. **She asked him what was it that made him stronger and braver than other men.**
15. **He asked me if I could solve that problem.**

The answer:

1. 'What do you want?' she asked him.
2. 'Are you coming with us?' he asked me.
3. He asked, 'When do you intend to make the payment?'
4. 'Do you come from China?' said the prince to the girl.
5. The poor man exclaimed, 'Will none of you help me?'
6. 'Which way should I go?' asked the little girl.
7. Alladin said to the magician, 'What have I done to deserve so severe a punishment?'
8. 'Don't you know the way home?' I said to her.
9. 'Do you write a good hand?' the teacher said to the student.
10. 'Have you anything to say on behalf of the accused?' said the judge finally.
11. 'Have you anything to tell me, little bird?' asked Ulysses.
12. 'Who are you, sir, and what do you want?' they asked.
13. The king was impressed with the magician and asked, 'What can I do for you?'

C:Change into direct speech

1. **She asked me if I was working tomorrow.**

She **asked me** "Are you working tomorrow?"

2. **He asked her if her brother had ever played golf.**

He asked her "Has he ever played golf ?"

3. **She asked the mechanic if he though the car was okay.**

She asked the mechanic "Do you think the car is okay?"

4. **The teacher asked the class if they had their homeowork.**

The teacher asked the class "Do you have your homework?"

5. **Donna asked me if she could borrow my car.**

Donna asked me "Can I borrow your car?"

6. **He asked her if she would be home later today.**

He asked her "Will you be at home later today?"

7. **He asked his assistant if the package had arrived yet.**

He asked his assistant "Did the package arrive yet?"

8. **She asked him if he had ever been married.**

She asked him "Have you ever been married?"

9. **She asked the seller if watermelons were still on sale.**

She asked the seller "Are watermelons still on sale?"

10. **A woman asked me if anyone was sitting there.**

A woman asked me "Is anyone sitting there?"

11- He asked if I was a teacher.

He asked "Are you a teacher?"

D)Turn the following sentence into direct speech:

1. The chairman asked his secretary whether she could make a report on the new project.

The chairman asked his secretary :"………………………………. on the new project ?"

2. Somebody queried whether the price would be reduced.

Somebody queried :"………………………………………… reduced ?"

3. Someone else asked whether it was possible to use another type of material.

Someone else asked :" …………………………………………another type of material ?"

4. In fact, he wondered whether that building was absolutely necessary.

In fact, he wondered :"……………………………………..absolutely necessary ?"

5. His neighbour asked when the building would be completed.

His neighbour asked :" ……………………………………….completed ?"

6. One journalist wrote that Peters was one of the best managers the firm had ever had.

One journalist wrote :" ………………………………………………………………………….. the firm has ever had."

7. Finally the Treasurer wondered whether the project would ever be completed.

Finally the Treasurer wondered :" ………………………………………………………………………… completed ?"

8. The manager said they'd better boost their productivity if they wanted to survive.

The manager said :
" ……………………………………………………….if you want to survive."

9. He thought there should be a more competitive spirit in the company.
He thought :"…………………………………………………………………… ……………………………………………………. in the company."

10. One member enquired whether they really needed that new building.
One member enquired :"……………………………………………………… this new building ?"

E)Turn the following sentence into direct speech:

1- She told me to look where I was going as the road was full of holes and very badly ill.

2- They said that while they were bathing they saw someone examining their clothes.

3- I asked if she had looked everywhere and she said that she had.

4- He suggested giving her a bottle of wine.

5- She asked what the weather had been like during my holidays and I said it had been awful.

6- Sally told me that she was working for IBM that month.

7- My friends congratulated me for my 18th birthday.

8- His daughter asked him when they were going to leave.

9- She wanted to know if I was going to stay there the following week.

10- He asked her when she had decided to buy a car and she said she had decided the previous week.

11 -The teacher asked us to do exactly what she said.

12 - His father asked him to switch off his mobile phone during meal times.

13 - George invited Mary to his party.

14 -The swimming pool attendant warned the boys about jumping in at the shallow end.

15 - Mary suggested that Peter should ask his parents for advice.

16 - The bus driver told them the bus had broken down.

17 - The teacher reminded that there would be a test on reported speech.

18 - She offered to help me with my homework.

F)Write these sentences into Reported or Direct Speech:

1. The man stated: "I didn't steal anything yesterday. I won it in a lottery a month ago".
-The man stated that he hadn't stolen anything the day before. He had won it in a lottery a month before.
2. Mary asked him: "Why aren't you calling me today?"
-Mary asked him why he wasn't calling her that day.
3. My parents suggested me: "Why don't you study everyday?"
-My parents suggested me not studying everyday.
4. Karsts wanted to know how much money they had.
-Karsts wanted to know: "How much money do you have?"
5. She asked Laura to sit down and not to talk to Jane then.
-She asked Laura:" Sit down and don't talk to Jane now".
6. Peter told us: "I'm going to the club tonight. Do you want to come with me?"
-Peter told us that he was going to the club that night. If we wanted to come with them.
7. The teacher said: "Don't forget that your exams are starting next week!"
-The teacher said not to forget that our exams were starting the following week.
8. My mother asked me: "Will you come home tomorrow?"

-My mother asked me if I would come home the following day.

G)Turn the following sentence into direct:

1. Peter said that he had drunk too much that night.
-"He has drunk too much tonight", Peter said.

2. The ecologist explained that we could save a lot of trees by recycling paper.
-The ecologist explained: "You can save a lot of trees by recycling paper".
3. Mum told us to give her our keys and not to forget to phone her whe we arrived.

- Mum told us:" Give me your keys and don't forget to phone me when you arrive".
4. William asked her if I had seen his sunglasses that he had left there the day before.

- William asked her:" Did you see my sunglasses that I left here yesterday?"

Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. **He says , " I'm pleased to get the prize "** **(He says that)**
2. **He said , " I shall meet him at six o'clock . "** **(He said that)**
3. **He said to me , " Stop when the light is red . "** **(He told me)**
4. **She said to her sister, " Don't play in the street "** **(not to)**
5. **He asked me when I arrived .** **(He said to me)**
6. **He advised me not to work for a late hour .** **(don't)**
7. **The teacher said , " Don't write the questions . "** **(not to)**
8. **Mother said to me, " Don't be late . "** **(not to)**
9. **" Leave me a lone, " said Mona to her friends .** **(to leave)**
10. **He said to the pupils, " Don't leave before you finish "(He told the pupils)**
11. **She said to me , " Don't write your name on the box . "** **(She told me)**
12. **" I'm going to travel to America . "** **(He told me)**
13. **He said, " I went to the cinema last Monday . "** **(He told me)**
14. **She said to me, " I'll buy a new car next month."** **(She told me)**
15. **Ahmed said to Ali, " I have won the prize last week." (Ahmed told Ali)**

****

Question tags

ا- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة فيكون السؤال المذيل منفى .. والعكس صحيح .
ب- يتم استخدام الفعل المساعد حسب زمن الفعل في الجملة ..

Ex :

1- He is out , isn't he ?
2- She isn't fat , is she ?
3- They are out , aren't …………….. ?
4- They aren't out , …………….. …..?
5- You aren't fine, …………….. ….?
6- You are tired , ……………………. ?
7- It isn't working , ………………….. ?
8- It is raining , ……………………….. ?
9- He won't go , will he ?
10- He will leave , ……………. ………?
11- They won't go , …………………… ?
12- They will leave , ……………. ……..?
13- You can't go alone , ………………..?
14- You can go alone , …………….. ……?
15- They couldn't mend the car, …………. ……….?
16- They could build the house , ………………….. ?
17- He hasn't come yet , has……. …………………?
18- He has just left , ………………………………. ?
19- They haven't come yet , ………………………… ?
20- They have just left , …………………… ……..?
21- You have just arrived , …………………………?
22- You haven't finished your work, ……………… ?
23- Noha has finished her work , ……………………. ?
24- Heba hasn't come yet , …………………………… ?
25- He speaks English well , doesn't he ?
26- He doesn't speak French , does he ?
27- Rami visits Tanta every summer, ………………………….. ?
28- Sami doesn't get up early , ………………………………….?
29- They don't like music , ……………………………………….?
30- They speak English well , don't they ?
31- You don't come late , ………………………………………….?
32- You get up early , ………………………………………………?
33- We shan't go , shall we ?
34- We shall leave, shan't we ?
35- We shan't leave, ………………………………………………?

36- We shall go , ……………………………………………………?
37- He shouldn't come late , …………………………………….?
38- He should come early , …………………………….. ?
39- He visited Tanta , didn't he ?
40- He didn't go , did he ?
41- They went out , …………………………………………..?
42- They didn't go , ………………………………………….?
43- It wasn't working , was it ?
44- It was working , wasn't it ?
45- She wasn't absent , …………………………………..?
46- She was at school , ……………………………………?
47- They weren't out , were they ?
48- They were at school , weren't they ?
49- You were playing football , ……………………………?
50- You weren't working , …………………………………..?
51- We were studying , ………………………………………?
52- We weren't playing , ……………………………………?
53- He had caught 10 fish by 5 p.m , …………………………..?
54- He hadn't caught 15 fish by 5 p.m , ………………………..?
55- He studies Arabic everyday , ………………………………?
56- They work in a prep school , ………………………………?
57- She cooked lunch , …………………………………………?
58- They will go tomorrow , …………………………………..?
59- He can climb that tree , …………………………………?
60- She read two stories , ……………………………………..?
61- Let's go out, shall <u>we</u>? أمر
62- Let's go out, will <u>you</u>?استئذان – طلب

****

Punctuation علامات الترقيم

أ- تستخدم علامات الترقيم لضبط الكلام المكتوب لنقل الرسالة اللغوية على النحو الصحيح .
ب- تقوم علامات الترقيم بتقسيم الجمل باستخدام الفواصل والنقاط وعلامات الاستفهام والتعجب والاقواس وغيرها من العلامات الضرورية .
حـ- علامات الترقيم الرئيسية هى :

1- Capital letter : B, G – H ………… etc **الحروف الكبيرة**
2-full stop = (.) **النقطة**
3- Comma = (,) **الفاصلة**
4- Interrogation Mark = (?) **علامة الاستفهام**
5- Exclamation mark = (!) **علامة التعجب**
6- Quotation (**اقتباس**) marks = ("   ")
7- Semicolon = (;) **الفاصلة المنقوطة**
8- Apostrophe = (') **الفاصلة العليا**

1- Capital letters : الحروف الكبيرة

يجب أن تبدأ الكلمة بحروف كبيرة في الحالات الاتية :

أ – الكلمة الأولى في اى جملة :

Ex :
1- **M**any farmers grow cotton .
2- **D**on't go late .
3- What is this ?
4- they have just arrived . **Correct**
* ………………………. .
5- his brother speaks 5 languages . **Correct**
* ………………………. .
6- good English also gives better chances for work . **Correct**
* ………………………. .

ب – اسماء الاعلام والصفات المشتقة من اسماء الاعلام منها :

Egypt – Rami – France

The Sphinx – Egyptian – French .

Ex :

1- We live in Egypt .
2- Egypt is an African country .
3- He studies english . **Correct**
* ……………………… .
4- he is an english man . **Correct**
* ……………………… .
5- have you been to paris ? **Correct**
* ……………………… .
6- she lives in aswan . **Correct**
* ……………………… .
7- aswan is a nice city . **Correct**
* ……………………… .
8- did you meet ramzy ? **Correct**
* ……………………… .

2- Full stop : (.)

أ – توضع في نهاية الجملة غير الاستفهامية :

Ex :

1- He speaks English well .
2- They don't speak French
* ……………………… .
3- Rewan visited giza two weeks ago **Correct**
* ……………………… .
4- a lot of people visit egypt **Correct**
* ……………………… .

ب – بعد الاختصارات :

A.R.E – U.N - Mr. – Mrs
M.A.Ramzi .

Ex :

Mr . Sameh is a teacher .
1- he lives in the u.k . **Correct**
* ……………………… .
2- they have been to the u.s.a . **Correct**
* ……………………… .

3- mr ali will visit London tomorrow . **Correct**

* ……………………… .

4- do you know dr adel . **Correct**

* ……………………… .

3- Comma = (,) للفصل بين الاجزاء المتناظرة للجملة

1- He speaks English , French and Italian .

2- She bought some vegetables some meat and some oil . **Correct**

* …………………………………………………… .

3- my brothers' names are rami nader hoda and solieman . **Correct**

* …………………………………………………… .

4- Interrogation Mark = (?) علامة الاستفهام

* تستخدم في نهاية اي سؤال :

Ex :

1- Where did he go ?

2- does he teach Arabic **Correct**

* ………………………… .

3- What did they tall mr kamal **Correct**

* ………………………… .

4- do Japanese visit egypt **Correct**

* ………………………… .

5- he gets up early doesn't he **Correct**

* ………………………… .

5- Exclamation Mark = (!) علامة التعجب

* تستخدم للتعبير عن شعور قوي .

Ex :

1- Look ! It's raining .

2- listen the birds are singing . **Correct**

* ………………………… .

3- What a beautiful day ! .

4- What a lovely dress . **Correct**

* ………………………… .

6- Quotation marks = ("   ") الاقتباس

* تستخدم في الكلام المباشر :

Ex :

1- He says, " I will visit Tanta "

2- She said our friends called us yesterday . **Correct**

* …………………………………………… .

3- They said to noha where is mr kamel . **Correct**

* ……………………………………… .

4- he said to shaker we will go to aswan next week . **Correct**

* …………………………………………………… .

7- The semicolon (;) الفاصلة المنقوطة

* قبل سرد قائمة من العناصر:

Ex :

1- She went to the grocer's and ordered him **the following ;** a kilo of rice , a tin of sardines and 2 kilos of sugar .

2- he asked them to buy the following two shirts a football and a watch . **Correct**

* ……………………………………………………………………… .

8- The Apostrophe : (')

* يستخدم في حالة الملكية واختصارات الافعال .

Ex :

I'm – I'll go – Sameh's book – the sudents' book

The grocer's = the grocer's shop

Correct the following :

1- they ll go to the butchers

* ………………………… .

2- he isn't going to visit banha

* ………………………… .

3- he wont go to meet mr fikry

* ………………………… .

4- this watch is noha s
* …………………………. .
5- our friends books aren't here
* …………………………. .
6- he gave adel s brother his book
* …………………………………
7- they are good friends , aren t they
* …………………………………
8- I don t like going abroad
* …………………………………
9- samir and I bought a car
* …………………………………
10- they ll go out wont they
* …………………………………
11- he doesn t speak german does he
* …………………………………
12- she didn t go yesterday did she
* ……………………

****

Revision(6)

Choose the correct answer :

1- I usually get the best marks at **(the – a – no article – an**) English .
2- My friend Ali plays (**a – the – an – no article**) guitar well .
3- This desk is made of (**a – the – an – no article**) wood .
4- Alexander Gerham Bell invented (**a – the – an – no article**) telephone .
5- (The – A – An – No article) President /president always calls for peace .
6- I am looking for (**a – the – an – no article**) job .
7- I received (**a – an – the – no article**) invitation to attend my friend's wedding party .
8- There is no life on **(a – an – the – no article**)moon .
9- (**The – A – An – No article**) Leopard /leopard is the fastest animal .
10- I usually have (**a – the – an – no article**) dinner at 9 o'clock .
11- The police arrested **(a – an – the – no article**) man who robbed the bank .
12- I saw an accident in **(a – an – the – no article**) street where I live .
13- I borrowed **(a – an – the – no article**) pen on the desk.
14- (**The – A – An – No article**) lunch which we had at my grandmother's was tasty .
15- I usually go to (**a – an – the – no article**) bed at 10 o'clock .
16- My father usually leaves **(a – the – an – no article**) work at 3 o'clock .
17- He is a student . He goes to (**a – the – no article – an**) school in the morning .
18- The police arrested the criminals and put them in (**a – the – an – no article)** prison **.**
19- He (**has got – got – has – had got**) his breakfast at 7.30 every morning .
20- Have you got a camera ? No , I (**don't- don't got – haven't – didn't**) .
21- I don't **(have – have got – getting – do**) a bike .
22- Last week , he **(had – has got – had got – got**) an accident and was taken to hospital .

23- I usually (**have – have got – had got – had**) tea after dinner .
24- I (**am having got – am having – getting – had**) my dinner , now .
25- I usually (**have – have got – have had – had got**) a bath every day .
26- I (**drove – was driving – would drive – had driven**) home when my car broke down .
27- While we (**watching – had watched – are watching – were watching**) the match on TV the light went out .
28- I said " Hello " to my grandfather but he couldn't hear me because he **(would listen – was listening – has listened – is listening**) to the radio .
29- Just as we were having lunch a visitor (**comes – came – was coming – would come**) .
30- Ali **(played – is playing – has played – was playing**) tennis when we saw him .
31- This mosque is (**the old – older – the oldest – more old**) than any other mosque in the area .
32- Adel doesn't use (**such – lot – so – more**) much sugar in tea as I do .
33- Professor Joness is (**more –most – the most – much**) intelligent man I have ever known .
34- She is **(beautiful – more beautiful – most beautiful – the most beautiful**) of all her sisters .
35- The higher the temperature , **(the hot – hotter – the hotter – the hottest**) the weather is .
36- People don't trust him (**because – so that – because of – so as to**) he is a liar .
37- He was absent from school **(since – so that – due to – to**) his illness .
38- (**Because – So as to – Owing to – So that**) their courage in war all people admired them .
39- (**Despite – Because – Although – Not only**) I had revised my answers, the teacher found a mistake .
40- He usually goes to the library to read **(consequently – in addition to – however – therefore**) borrowing books .
41- She **(not only – as well as – in addition to – even though**) took part in the competition but she won a prize as well .

42- He fought bravely in the battle (**although – because – despite – whether**) his serious injury .
43- You can borrow my dictionary (**besides – although – as long as – so that**) you bring it back tomorrow .
44- He speaks English and French **(as well – in addition – in addition to – despite**) Germany .
45- (**Because – Although – In addition – Besides**) writing novels, he is a poet .
46- My cousin went to London (**because – so that – so as to – for**) he could do postgraduate studies .
47- I couldn't get sleep **(provided that – because – owing to–despite**) the noise .
48- I got up late this morning, (**so that – in order to – as long as – consequently**) I was late for work .
49- My father taught me (**what – why – how – where**) to catch fish .
50- I don't know (**why – where – what- whose**) your house is .
51- Nobody knows (**who –how – when – why**) he is angry .
52- The house (**which – what – where – when**) I live has a big garden.
53- The flowers (**whose – where – which – whom**) I cut this morning are still fresh .
54- The boy (**who – whose – which – whom**) threw the stones was punished .
55- This is the famous writer (**who – which – whom – whose**) novels were turned into films .
56- He has a big garden (**which – whose – whom – where**) he grows fruits .
57- The girl (**whose – which – where – whom**) you met is my daughter .
58- I didn't hear (**which – what – whom – whose**) he was saying .
59- The magazine (**whose – which – who – what**) you lent me is very interesting .
60- Beethoven (**which – whose – which – that**) music is wonderful was deaf .
61- This is the place (**which – what – where – whose**) I was born .
62- This is the person (**who – whom – whose – which**) reported the accident to the police .
63- The news which he told us (**are – were- was – have been**) good .

64- The lady cried out asking for **(a help – helps – help – helped)** when the thief seized her handbag .

65- My parents usually give me (**advice – advices – many advices – a few advices**) .

66- How (**many – any long – much**) bread do you want ?

67- I'd like to get (**any – many – some – an**) information about tours to Aswan , please .

68- There isn't (**a lot – many – few – much**) milk in the bottle .

69- **(A– Lot – Few – Much**) students were absent yesterday .

70- I spent most of my money and I haven't got **(a few – a lot of – much – many**) .

71- It's a month **(ago – since – for – last**) I saw my cousin .

72- Mr. Mohammed has been teaching us English (**since – ago – already – for**) a year now .

73- It **(rains – is raining – has been raining – rained**) all day and hasn't stopped yet .

74- We (**work – began to work – have worked –have been working**) on this project three months ago .

75- So far, we **(are learning – will learn – were learning - have been learning**) English for six years .

76- Students should prepare (**themselves – ourselves – them – us**) well for the exams .

77- My brother fell down the stairs and hurt (**him – his – my self – himself**) .

78- We should protect **(us – yourselves – me – ourselves**) from the weather .

79- When the dog saw (**herself – itself – myself – it**) in the mirror, it barked .

80- I managed to repair my cassette recorder **(itself – myself – yourself – himself**).

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1- **During his stay in London, he bought some English dictionaries.(While**)

* ………………………………………………………..…… .

2- During walking along the street, I saw an accident . **(…. when …)**

* ………………………………………………………..…… .

3- During the rain, I stayed at home . **(while it …..)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

4- He went to many shops, then he bought his new suit . **(until)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

5- After he had finished his work, he left the office . **(till)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

6- The children slept, then their father returned home . **(…. when …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

7- First, he wrote a letter, then he posted it . **(When)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

8- He will finish his work, then he will go to the cinema . **(After)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

9- She will eat and wash up the dishes . **(as soon as …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

10- They will do their homework ,then they will watch TV . **(.. before ..)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

11- Aly and Samy are the same strength **(as …. as)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

12- March and July are the same length **.** **(long)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

13- Rania and Mona are the same age . **(as …. as)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

14- Honey is sweeter than Jam . **(Jam isn't …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

15- The plane is faster than train . **(the train isn't …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

16- April is longer than February . **(..not as …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

17- I speak English better than my brother does . **(My brother doesn't)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

18- Girls aren't so strong as boys . **(Boys are …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

19- English isn't so difficult as some other languages are **.** **(more)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

20- Autumn isn't so cold as winter **.** **(Winter …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

21- A donkey isn't as intelligent as a horse . **(A horse is ….)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

22- Nader doesn't play tennis as good as I do **.** **(I play …)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

23- No other city in Europe is colder than Moscow. **(Moscow…)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

24- No teacher in the school is taller than Mr.Fouad. (**The tallest**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

25- I have never heard a story stranger than this story . (**This story is**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

26- No footballer in the team is better than Ahmed . (**Ahmed is …**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

27- Mohammed is really very intelligent compared to other students in his school . **(Mohammed is the …**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

28- Aly is so tall that he can touch the ceiling . (**such**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

29- Huda is very liar girl. Nobody believes her . (**such**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

30- The weather we have is so fine that a lot of tourists come to enjoy it. (**We have such …**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

31- Eating much makes you fat . (**the more …**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

32- If you study hard, you will get high marks . **(the harder …**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

33- He lost his job because he was careless . **(owing to**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

34- We arrived at the meeting late due to the heavy traffic . (**because**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

She will get a good job since she is clever . **(because of**)
* …………………………………………………………………… .

35- Her parents were delighted for her success. **(as)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

36- He always comes the first in the exams because he is intelligent . (**on account of)**
* …………………………………………………………………… .

37- My mother went to the city centre in order to buy some new clothes. (**so that**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

38- Most students study hard so that they can get high marks . **(so as to**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

He works hard because he wants to be successful and famous .

(**so that**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

39- The tourist spoke slowly because he wanted me to understand him

(in order that)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

40- The players train hard as they want to win the final match .

(In order to …)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

41- Although he has a big fortune people don't like him . (**Despite** ..)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

42- In spite of his strength he can't carry a desk . (**Although** ..)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

43- He is stupid, but he is popular with people . (**However** ..)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

44- She has a sweet voice but she doesn't want to be a singer .**(In spite of)**

* …………………………………………………………………… .

45- She is deaf but she is a percussion player . (**as**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

46- I am interested in reading and my brother is interested in reading too .

(as well as)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

47- You must answer this exercise whether you are ready or not .

(**even though**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

48- He played a good match and scored a goal too. **(as well as = besides**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

49- Dr . Zewail is a great scientist and he is modest too . (**not only ..**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

50- People drink a lot of tea in Egypt . (**A lot of tea …**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

51- The police chase the criminals everywhere . (**by ….**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

52- My brother usually beats me at chess . (**I …**)

* …………………………………………………………………… .

53- Most people speak English all over the world . (**spoken**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

54- The waiter brings me a cup of coffee at eleven o'clock . (**by …**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

55- Somebody called the ambulance . (**by**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

56- In the past, people used the animals for travelling . (**The animals ..**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

57- The firm gave Mr. Hamdy a prize . (**Mr. Hamdy …**) **(A prize …**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .
* ………………………………………………………………… .

58- The porter carried my bags to the car . **(by**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

59- The teacher has asked us to write a composition . (**We** ….)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

60- Someone has spilt some ink on the carpet . (… **been** …)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

61- The secretary has typed all the letters . (**by**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

62- Somebody has damaged the cars in the car- park . (… **been**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

63- Nobody has answered my questions . (**My questions** …)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

64- The army will call him up next year . **(He …)**
* ………………………………………………………………… .

65- Students must write the examination paper in ink . (… be …)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

66- The government should provide more jobs for the graduates . (**by** ..)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

67- People are using the internet widely now . (… **being** …)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

68- The government is building more schools . (**by**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

69- They were bringing the children up very well . **(The children** …)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

70- Students are doing an important exercise now . (**being**)
* ………………………………………………………………… .

71- The mechanic had repaired my car . (**been**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

72- Someone had closed all the windows of the office . **(by**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

73- The police were informed of the accident . (**Somebody** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

74- The house is looked after . (**An old servant** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

75- A final exam must be passed. (**Students** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

76- The letters have been posted . **(The secretary …)**

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

77- The carpenter made a new desk for Samy . (**Samy** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

78- The barber cuts my hair once a month . (**I** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

79- The mechanic will repair Ahmed's car . (**Ahmed** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

80- People say that he is a millionaire . (**It** ….)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

81- We think that she is honest . (**She** ….)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

82- People thought he had a big fortune . (**He** …)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

83- The man stopped me in the street because he wanted to know the way to the station . (**who**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

84- The student came the first in the exam as she had studied hard . (**who**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

85- The players played very well, so they won the match . (**who**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

86- The boy in a blue jacket makes noise . (**who**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

87- Mr. Khalid advises us a lot. (**who**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

88- The man had robbed a bank , so the police arrested him . (**whom**)

* ………………………………………………………………………… .

89- The nurse had made great efforts to save the patient's life, so we thanked her a lot . (**whom**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

90- My brother bought a new shirt yesterday, but it was narrow . (**which**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

91- My friend Ahmed gave me a valuable present on my birthday . (**The present**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

92- I watched an interesting film on TV yesterday . (**which**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

93- I lost a pen, but it was not a good one . (**The pen** …)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

94- I bought a computer last month but it broke down . (**that**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

95- The spectators were delighted as their team won the match . (**whose**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

96- The lady was sad because her bag was stolen . (**whose**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

97- The man with a black car drives fast . (**whose**)

- …………………………………………………………………….…… .

Rem

a piece of – a bit of – an item of

98- I have got some news for you . (**a**)

* I have got **a piece of** news for you.

99- My teacher gave me some advice . (**a**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

100-I last used my camera when I visited Aswan and Luxor . (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

101-The last time he went to the cinema when he took the mid-year holiday. (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

102-I last phoned my uncle 2 weeks ago . (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

103-The last time Ali travelled abroad was in 1993 . (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

104-The plane took off from Cairo Airport 3 hours ago . (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

105-I last played tennis six months ago . (**for**)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

106-It's a long time since she went to the zoo. (**she hasn't** ..)

* …………………………………………………………………….…… .

107- The last time my pen friend wrote to me was in 1998. (**for**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

108- I haven't swum in the sea for a year . (**ago**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

109- The secretary wrote a report a moment ago . (**just**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

110- He is still doing his homework . (**yet**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

111- The mechanic began to repair my car three weeks ago and hasn't finished yet . (**for**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

112- My sister started learning French 6 months ago . (**for**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

113- We started to work on this project in 2000 . (**since**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

114- My elder brother has been driving his car for 5 years. (… **began** ..)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

115- I went to Aswan and came back . (**been**)

* …………………………………………………………….…… .

Answers

ملاحظات هامة

1- الإجابة فقط على الإسئلة في نهاية كل درس والتدريبات الأخرى يجيب عنها الدارس من خلال الأمثلة المحلولة.
2-لم يتم الإجابة على بعض الأسئلة و ذلك لتشابه الحلول.

Page no. 4-5

A- Choose the correct answer :

1- is. 2- is. 3- are. 4- are. 5- are. 6- are. 7- are. 8- was. 9- were. 10-were.

B- Complete :

1- is. 2- is. 3- (am – 1) or any suitable answer. 4- He was. 6- They are. 7- was.
8- He was. 10- They were. 12- are.

Page no. 5-6

Arrange :- رتب

1-Sami is a good boy . 3- I was in grade one. 5- The ball is red.

Page no. 7-8

Choose the correct answer :

1- is 2- do 3- has 7- had 8- did 9- was 11- were 12- did 14- does
15- have 18- did 19 – is 20- are

Page no. 10

Choose :1- an. 2- the. 4- the. Choose : 1- a. 2- the. 3- an.

Page no. 13-14

A – Choose the correct answer :

1-the. 2-the. 3- an. – a 4-the 5-the 7- .....8-…….. 9 – ……… 11- the. 12- no. article. 13- the. 15- Man. 16- No article.
17- no article. 20 – the. 21- No article. 23- no article. 24-The. 25- No article.

- **B. Rewrite using the world (s) in brackets :**
  1- The more she eats, the fatter she becomes.
  2- The more you practise, the better result you get.

Page no. 16

Complete : اكمل

Girls – policemen - stories – a teacher – a workman – an army.
Toys – wishes – matches – addresses – potatoes – an apple – a tax – a month.

Page no. 18

Choose : 1- has got 2- have got 8- had.

Complete : اكمل

1- Yes, I have. 2- No, he hasn't. 3- How many brothers have you got? 4- I haven't.

Page no. 20

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- have 2- haven't 3- have 4- have 5- Has 6- had 7- have 8- had 9- Have 10- has

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1-Have you got any money in your wallet ? 2- Have you got a T.V ?

3- He hasn't got a mobile.4- He doesn't have a new model car. 6- I haven't got a car.

Page no. 22-23

A - Choose the right answer:

1- It 2 He -3 –They 4- She 5- His 6-My7-Her 8- Your
9-hisself 10 - himself 11- ourselves 12-themselves 13-yours 14-mine 15-hers
16- ours 17- yours 18- your 19- my 20- ours 21-theirs 22- his
23- him 24 – her 25-them 26-me 27- us 28- you 29- him 30- it

B- Complete : اكمل 1-him 2-it 3- them 4- It 5- He 6- It 7- They 8- hers 9 his - 10- myself

Page no. 23-24:

A– Choose the correct answer : 1-the 2- a 6-the 7- a 9 – A

10- the 14 - Were 15- was 16- Is 24 –are 25 – are

28- They 30 – themselves

B-Complete : اكمل

1- a – a - the- the – the- the 2- three – was - two – I- Our – They- My – is

3- is – a – the – My – brothers –are- a- My – a – the - us

Page no. 27

A- Choose : 1- colder 2- the coldest 3- sharp 4- more expensive 5- most expensive 6- the

Page no. 29

A – Choose the correct answer : 1- shortest. 2- cleverer. 3- the most.

4- a lot cheaper 5- farther 6- most intelligent

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- He thinks that poverty is worse than any other thing in life.
3- Sami is younger than any other boy in the class.
4- A plane is faster than a train.
5- No river in the world is as long as the Nile.
7- This is the most amusing story I have ever heard.
8- France isn't as hot as Egypt.
9- This film is more exciting than any other film I have ever seen .
10 –The car is as expensive as the bus.
11- He is the worst person I have ever seen.
12-Your project was more successful than ours.

14- Luxor isn't as big as Cairo.

17- The Palestinian problem is more complicated than any other problem in the world

18-Alex is more beautiful than any other city in Egypt.
20-older

Page no. 31: **1-d)who 2-b)which 3-c)that 4- d) that**

5-c) where 6-b)when 7-d)whose 8-b)what 9- b)me 10-b)Their

11-c)my 12-d)They 13-b)him 14- c)were

Page no. 34-36:

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- who 2- which 3- where 4-whom 5- which 6-that 7- what 8- whose 9- where 10- when

B) Use the word between brackets to make a correct answer:

1-younger 2- tallest 3- more expensive 4- He went to see the doctor who told him to stay in bed . 5-The car which I bought was expensive so much. 6- I met the woman whose son got the highest marks. 7- Students like the summer season when they take a long holiday. 8- Sami and Hani are students. 9- They are good men.

C:Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1-I lost the book which I borrowed from Sami. 2- The policeman who I asked wasn't very helpful. 3- Kamal whose wife is English often travels to England . 4- The library is a place where we like to read . 5- He told me the story which I have never heard of before . 6- The watch which he gave me was nice. 7- Bell is the person that invented the telephone. 8- This school is the place where I was educated. .

Page no. 38- 39:

Choose : **1- few 2-many 3- many 4- a lot of 5- many 6- a little 7- much 8- any 9- some**

10 - some 11- any 12- more than 13-most 14 – worst 15 – better 16 – most 17 – stronger 18- most

19- bigger 20- more 45- The 46- an 51 – best 52- a lot of 53 – A lot

Page no46- 47:

A:Complete:

(1)

1- he is 2- He is coming by bus. 3-No,I'm not. I'm busy. 4- Are you going to meet him,later? 5- Are you going to visit him a lot? 6-How is he going back?7-How long are you going to stay here?

(2)

1-I'm going 2- Who are you going with? 3- No,we aren't. 4- Are you going to visit the pyramids ? 5-I'm going to stay

B:Choose the correct answer :

1- eating 2- working 3- reading 7- is 8- are singing

Page no.49:

A – Choose the correct answer : 1- speaks 2- work 3- are working 4- goes 5- read 6- read 7- am working 8- visit.

B) Correct the verbs between brackets : 1- cooks 2- cook 3- am reading 5- play 6- crosses 7- finish 8- am studying.

Page no.55:

Complete: 1- I learn 2-Who teaches you English ? 3-Yes, of course 4- Does the Arabic teacher teach you well ? 5- Five times a week? 6- How do you draw? 7- No, I go to school alone. 8- How does he go back?

Page no. 56-57

A: Choose the correct answer :

1- are 2- am writing 3- many 4- gets 5- was 6- is burning 7- him 8- Our 9- Their 10 – myself f 20- does not 21- work 22- Heba's 23- drinks 24- swim 25- playing

B- Compete :

1- I'm going 2- I'm going by bus 3-Some subjects 4-Yes, I like it

5-No,I'm not 6- More than 5 7- I come back 8- Yes,he goes to school with me

9- No, I'm not

Page no. 60-61

1- helped 2- help 3- visited 4- studies 10- was 15 – smokes 16- ate 17- are catching18- flew 19- watched 20 - plays

Page no. 64-67:

A- Complete : (1)

1-I went 2- What did you buy? 3- I went 4-Did you stay in a hotel? 5- I stayed for 3 days. 6- No.I go there 7- Does Rami go with you? 8- He buys 9- Where do you sell them? 10- Yes,it is

C- Correct the verbs in brackets :

1- gets up 2- visited 3- is cleaning 4- bought-

D- Use the words between brackets to make a correct sentence :

1- They have got a new car . 2- There are new houses . 3- We met our friends yesterday . 4- We were in London last summer.

5- They studied their lessons well . 7- She finishes her work early .8- How many books are there? 9- I don't have tea at 5 p.m .10- How much milk is there? 13- They usually play football. 14- He sometimes read a book . 15- She likes music .

Page no. 71:

Choose the correct answer : 1- was studying. 2- came. 3- rang. 4- arrived 5-were watching .

Page no. 72-73

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- When the light went out , they were studying . 2- During my writing a letter , the light went off . 3- While we were watching TV, he arrived. 4- While he was working , the

light went off . 6- During our studying English, the light went out . 7- During their building a school , it rained . 8- During our visiting the pyramids, it rained. 9- When the light went out , he was writing a letter . 10-While I was drinking some water ,they scored a goal .

Page no. 75-76-77 :

A:Choose the correct answer :

1- will go 2- go 3- goes 4- speak 5- visit 6- went 7- meet 8- are meeting 9- will need 10- live

B: Complete

1- I will go 2- Who will you go with ? 3- We will go by bus. 4- What places will you visit? 5- We will stay in a hotel. 6- How long will you stay?

Choose the correct answer

1- likes 2- want 3- are reading 4- do you mean 5- tastes 6- seeing 7- tasting

Correct the verbs between brackets :

1- is coming 4- swam 5- wants

Page no. 81-82:

A:Choose the correct answer :

1- is leaving 2- am going 3- will 4- left 5- will leave 6- arrives 7- am visiting 8- visited 9- will visit 10- are going

B: Complete : **1- I'm going 2- How will you go? 3- No,I won't go alone.4- Where will you stay?**

C:correct the verbs between brackets :

1.will go 2-will swim 3-met 4- cooks 5-fishes 6- is fishing 7- drink 8-am studying 9-cathches 10- will

Page no.86 :

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- have sent 2- has phoned 3- recently 4- for 6- been

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- My uncle has just phoned us. 2- I have been to Aswan. 3- He hasn't written to me for a long time. 4- We haven't phoned him since he was in the hospital . 7- I went to Italy and came back. 8- It has been a long time since he visited Egypt .

Page no . 88 :

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- since 2- ago 3- for 4- since 6- has been playing 7- since 8- have been using

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- He has worked in that factory for 10 years . 2- They haven't visited London since last summer . 3- He has been a ploce officer since he joined the police on his twenty-first birthday. 6- How long have you been studying English ?

Page no. 90-91:

Choose the correct answer : **1- had finished 2- finished 3- was 4- had caught 5- left 6- had left 7- had learned 8- had written 9- had finished 10- had gone**

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

Before they phoned us, they had arrived . 2- After he had studied, he went out. 3- After she had finished her homework, she went out . 4- Before he visited Tanta, he had come back . 5- As soon as he had finished his work , he watched TV. 6- Before we went out ,we had studied our lessons. 7-As soon as Zidan had got up, he washed his face. 8-. Before they went abroad, they had finished their study . 9- After Hoda had cleaned her teeth ,she went to bed .

Page no.93 – 94 :

A – Choose the correct answer : **1- phoned. 2- playing. 3- was doing. 7- was getting. 8- was doing. 9- were playing. 11- had. 12- had arrived. 15- had he written.**

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

- 1- While we were having supper , the doorbell rang. 3- When I was on holiday, I used to go to the library everyday . 4- When I saw an accident, I was walking to school. 5- Just as it was raining, he drove into a tree. 6- I had left the house before the rain started . 7- As soon as he had got his degree, he went abroad. 8- We didn't go for a walk until we had finished work.9- After I had met him , I knew about his success . 10- By the time he felt sick ,he had eaten too much canned food . 11- Having done his homework, he went shopping . 13- No sooner had the plane taken off, than it crashed.

Page no.95 – 97 :

A- Choose the correct answer :

1- was 2- study 3- any 4- studied 5- studies 6- are studying

7- who 8- whose 9- which 10 – bigger 11- tallest 12- few 13- much 14- were

B- Use the word(s) between brackets and make a correct sentence :

1-There are five boxes outside. 2-We were in London. 3- I bought 2 knives.

4- I have got two new watches . 5- Rami has got five loaves . 6- Our school is near our house . 7- They have visited many places . 8- They mended the car themselves. 9- We did our homework ourselves . 10- He studies his lessons himself.

C- Complete :-

(1)1- He is 2- What does he teach? 3- No ,it isn't 4- Does his brother work there? 5- He teaches 6- Do they go to school together?

(2) 1- I was 2- What places did you visit? 3- I went 4- Who did you go with? 5- I went back

(3) 1-Yes, I visited it 2-Did you stay in a hotel ? 3- I stayed 4-How long did you stay? 5- No , I? didn't

D:Choose:

1-the 2- a 3- an 4- the 5- the 6-play 7- play 8- play 9- Those 10- any

11- A lot of 12- much

Page no. 98:

Correct the verbs between brackets :

1- will be reading 2- will have built 3- will be cooking 4- I will be studying 5- will have joined 6- will be reading.

Page no. 103-104

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- must have gone. 2-Would. 3- Could. 4-must have .

5- can't be. 6- must have. 8- can't be.

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

6- He might have travelled to the country. 7- My uncle may have gone shopping. 8- He can't have committed this serious crime on purpose. . 9- This building must have been built before 1960. 10-That old tree needs to be cut.

Page no. 112-113:

A:Choose :

1- visits. 3- quick. 4- finished. 5- too. 6- either. 8- too. 9- too. 16 – was going. 17- should. 21- also. 22- went. 23- having - went.

B:Choose the correct answer :

1- for 2- since 3- ago 4- many 5- a lot of 6- fewer 7- much 8- does 9- These 10 – some 11- grow 12- finished 13- will 14- studies

15- stayed 16- stayed 17- just 18- the 19 – a 20 – an 21- which

22- who 23- whose 24- where 25- when

Page no. 114-115:

A- choose **1-carefully . 2- slowly . 3- fast. 4- hard . 7- hard .**

B-Complete **1-easily. 5- happily . 7- lazily . 9- fast . 10- well or hard.**

Page no. 120:

Choose the correct answer : **1- came 2- had finished 3- would 4- would have gone 5- will go 6- would go 7- had 8- could have helped**

Page no. -123-126:

Choose the correct answer : **1- wouldn't have made 2- wouldn't have had 3- Unless**

4- will go 5- would buy 6- had been 7- won't get 8- would marry 9- Hadn't
10- would have

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- If he hadn't been careless, he wouldn't have lost his money.2- Unless he had helped me, I wouldn't have passed the test . 3- If he weren't short, he would join the army. 4-If he had helped her, she would have finished in time. 5- If I were rich, I would buy this car. 6- If she studies well ,she can get high marks . 7- Unless he had been out, he could have seen the robbery . 9- Unless they are members , They won't be allowed into the club. 10- If you don't hurry up, you will miss the train .

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Should he stop eating too much , he will lose weight. 2- If I Knew the truth, I could tell you.3- If he had enough free time, he could go to the club. 4- If he weren't too short, he would play basketball . 5- If she were well enough ,She could go out alone. 6- If Hazem didn't work lazily, he could make more money.

Were : **1- Were he to earn more money , he would live better . 3- Were you to need help………. 4- If the war hadn't broken out, a lot of people wouldn't have been killed. 5- If I had known………………………………6- If the weather had been fine yesterday , we could have gone to the club . 7- If Hossam had had enough practice, he wouldn't have lost his tennis match. 5- If he hadn't been intelligent, he couldn't have got the job .**

Had: **1- Had I known his address, I would have sent him an invitation . 2- Hadn't they fought bravely, they wouldn't have won the battle .**

In case of*:** 1- In case of behaving badly, she will be punished . ***without / If it 1- Without his cleverness, he wouldn't get the job . If it weren't for his cleverness, he wouldn't get the job. 2- Unless he had apologized, he would have got into trouble .

Page no. 128:

1- walking 2- staying 3- riding 4- riding 5- reading 6- making 7- ride 8- getting 9- walk 10- shouting 11- helping 12- swimming 13- building 14- fishing 15- call

Page no. 132-133:

Choose :

1- b) at 2- b) in 4- d) with 5- in 8- in 13- on 14- in 15- in 21- at 22- of 23- in 24- off 25- for 26- in 27- of 28- with 29- off 30- for 31- off 32 – of 42- for 43- down – 44- into 45-out 46- on 47- of 48- after

Page no. 134-141:

A- Choose the correct answer :

1- are 2- were 3- was 4- are 5- have 6- has 7- do 8- did 9- doesn't 10- does 26 – herself 27- themselves 28- myself 29- him 30- them 31- your 32-yourself 42- hotter 43- most 44- oldest 45- older 46- more 47- whose 48- where 49- when 50 – yourself 51- Lots of 52- a lot of 80 – yet 81- for 82- since 83- ago 84- were playing 85- rang 86- had played 87- played 88- had watched 89- feeling 90- helping 91- may 92- might know 93- might have known 94- reading 95- would fail 96- visiting 97- couldn't meet 98- got 99- had met 100- reading

B- Correct the word(s) between brackets :

1- fishes 2- began 3- is cooking 4- will meet \ are going to meet 5- fish 6-sold 7- **is knocking 8- will travel 9- was playing 10- came 11- had come 12- were having 13- study 14- came 15- wouldn't have met**

C- Use the word(s) between brackets and make any necessary changes to make the sentence correct :

1- He doesn't speak English well ._2- These are my favourite dishes . 3- They were reading a story . 4- He studies hard everyday . 5- They cook rice everyday .

D: Complete :

(1)

1- I'm going 2-Who are you going with? 3- No,we aren't 4- Are you going to visit the pyramids ? 5- I'm going to stay

(2)

1- I was 2- Were you with your brother? 3- Yes, of course. 4- What were you doing there?

(3)

1- I learn 2- Who teaches you English? 3- Yes, of course. 4-Does the Arabic teacher teach you well ? 5- Five times 6- How do you draw?

(4)

1- I went 2- Who did you go with? 3-We went by train. 4- What did you visit? 5- Yes 6- Where did you stay?

(5)

1- I will go 2-Who will you go with? 3- By car 4-What will you visit? 5- In a hotel. 6- How long will you stay?

(6)

1- I have been 2- Have you enjoyed your stay? 3- Yes, of course. 4- By train.

(7)

1- Can I help you? 2- 10 pounds 3- Anything else? 4- How much does a kilo of potatoes cost? 5- Thank you . 6- Not at all.

Page no. 145-146:

A – Choose the correct answer : 1- but 2- Although 3- However 4- to 5- so that 6- could 7- so 8- in order to 9- because 10- could

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- He was ill, but he didn't go to the doctor . He didn't go to the doctor although he was ill. He was ill. However , he didn't go to the doctor .2- He sold his car so that he could get more money . 3- They get up early in order to arrive on time. 4- She was ill , so she went to the doctor. = She went to the doctor because she was ill .= She was ill , therfore she went to the doctor. 7- Although they helped him, he didn't thank them .= They helped him ,but, he didn't thank them .= They helped him . However , he didn't thank them .

Page no. 149 :

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- Owing to 2- in addition to 3- so as to 4- as 5- Despite 6- consequently 7- because. .

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- He went on working despite being seriously ill. 3- Although he works hard, he is unlucky . 6- We postponed our trip because of the bad weather . 7- He will get high marks due to his intelligence . 8- She got married because she was polite. 10- The accident happened because it was raining heavily . 11- We moved the furniture round so as to make more space . 14- My father as well as my uncles is going to travel abroad . 16- He not only won the game , but also got the gold medal .

Page no. 152 :

A – Choose the correct answer :

1- provided that 2- unless 3- as long as 4- provided that 5- provided that.

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Tourists will come to our country provided that we look after our sights and beaches. 2- You won't catch the train unless you leave now . 3- She could get high marks if she doesn't study well . 4- I won't forgive her as long as she is ill brought up .

Page no. 155:

A – Choose the correct answer : 1- is exported 2- was caught 3- have been built 4- are being written 5- was told 6- be cheated 7- was taken 8- be sent 9- is being discussed 10- had been.

Page no. 157 :

D- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- Ahmed's camera may be given to you. 2- The number of cars on Cairo roads must be reduced. 3- The telephone was invented by Bill . 4- We were being watched by the teacher inside the class . 5- The thief opened the safe and stole the money . 6- It can't be denied that he is honest . 7- These reports have just been finished by Dina . 8- Salma's camera was being looked for by Salma . 9- A letter was given to her by the postman. 10- The government spends large sums of money on scientific research. 11- He has already typed all the reports. 12- He didn't marry till his flat had been furnished. 13- The murderer will be caught by the police sooner or later . 14- Their computer is being used now . 15- French isn't studied by them. 16- A new car won't be bought by them. 17-A new car wasn't bought by them.

Page no. 169 :

A – Choose the correct answer: 1- thought 2- is known 3- was reported - have escaped 4- to be 5- believed

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- His car is said to be damaged in an accident . 2- It was alleged that a young man had stolen the money from the bank . 3- The strike is expected to end soon . 4- It is believed that the boy is wearing a white pullover . 5- He is alleged to have kicked a policeman . 6- She is said to work 16 hours a day . 7- It is thought that he finishes his computer course . 8- Women are reported to have taken part in the demonstration.

Page no. 203 : 213:

A – Choose the correct answer : 1- no article 2- the 3- no article 4- the 5- The 6- a 7- an 8- the 9- The 10- no article 14- The 18- no article 22- had 25- have 27- were watching 28- was listening 35- the hotter 41- not only 43- as long as 44- in addition to 45- Besides 53- which 54- who 55- whose 63- was 65- advice 67- some 70- much 73- has been raining 75- have been learning 80- myself.

B- Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets :

1- While he was staying in London, he bought some English dictionaries.
2- I was walking along the street when I saw an accident .
3- I stayed at home while it was raining.
4- He didn't buy his new suit until He had gone to many shops.
5- He didn't leave the office till he had finished his work.
6- The children were sleeping when their father returned home .
7- When he had written a letter, he posted it .
8- After (finishing /he finishes/ he has finished)his work, he will go to the cinema

9- She will wach up the dishes as soon as she has eaten / (eats).
11- Aly is as strong as Samy .
14- Jam isn't as sweet as honey .
18- Boys are stronger than girls .
19- Other languages are more difficult than English .
22- I play tennis better than Nader .
25- This story is the strangest one I have ever heard.
28- Aly is such a tall boy that he can touch the ceiling .
36- He always comes the first in the exams on account of his intelligence/ being intelligent .
37 - My mother went to the city centre so that she could buy some new clothes.
38- Most students study hard so as to get high marks .
50- A lot of tea is drunk in Egypt by people.
51- The criminals are chased everywhere by the police.
55- The ambulance was called by somebody.
56- The animals were used for travelling in the past.
57- Mr. Hamdy was given a prize by the firm. – or
A prize was given to Mr. Hamdy by the firm.
59- We have been asked to write a composition by the teacher .
64- He will be called up next year by the army.
65- The examination paper must be written in ink .
67- The internet is being used widely now by people.
71- My car had been repaired by the mechanic.
73- Somebody informed the police of the accident .
74- An old servant looks after the house.
75- Students must pass a final exam.
76- The secretary has posted the letters.
77- Samy had a new desk made by the carpenter .
79- Ahmed will have his car repaired by the mechanic .
80 - It is said that he is a millionaire.
81- She is thought to be honest .
82- He was thought to have had a big fortune .
83- The man who stopped me in the street, wanted to know the way to the station . 87- It is Mr. Khalid who advises us a lot.
88- The man whom the police arrested had robbed a bank.
98- I have got a piece of news for you .
99- My teacher gave me a piece of advice.
100- I haven't used my camera since I visited Aswan and Luxor .
101- He hasn't gone to the cinema since he took the mid-year holiday.
102- I haven't phoned my uncle since last 2 weeks .
107- My pen friend hasn't written to me for ……….
111- The mechanic has been repairing my car for three weeks .
113- We have been working on this project since 2000 .
114 - My elder brother began to drive his car 5 years ago .

المحتويات

Good Luck.

رقم الإيداع
2014/11403
ISBN
978-977-723-025-4



العنوان: 11 شارع د/محمد رأفت – محطة الرمل – الإسكندرية
تليفون وفاكس : 4838326 (03)(2+)
للاستعلام والمبيعات : 01001634294 (2+)

URL: www.daralbraa.com
Email: info@daralbraa.com